# **Wonderware**®

SCADAlarm<sup>™</sup> User's Guide

Revision A Last Revision: 10/21/04

Invensys Systems, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this documentation shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Invensys Systems, Inc. No copyright or patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this documentation, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

The information in this documentation is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Invensys Systems, Inc. The software described in this documentation is furnished under a license or nondisclosure agreement. This software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of these agreements.

#### © 2004 Invensys Systems, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Invensys Systems, Inc. 26561 Rancho Parkway South Lake Forest, CA 92630 U.S.A. (949) 727-3200 http://www.wonderware.com

#### Trademarks

All terms mentioned in this documentation that are known to be trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Invensys Systems, Inc. cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this documentation should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

Alarm Logger, ActiveFactory, ArchestrA, Avantis, DBDump, DBLoad, DT Analyst, FactoryFocus, FactoryOffice, FactorySuite, FactorySuite A<sup>2</sup>, InBatch, InControl, IndustrialRAD, IndustrialSQL Server, InTouch, InTrack, MaintenanceSuite, MuniSuite, QI Analyst, SCADAlarm, SCADASuite, SuiteLink, SuiteVoyager, WindowMaker, WindowViewer, Wonderware, and Wonderware Logger are trademarks of Invensys plc, its subsidiaries and affiliates. All other brands may be trademarks of their respective owners.

# Contents

Before You Begin	9
About This Guide	
Document Conventions	

# CHAPTER 1: Getting Started ......11

About SCADAlarm	11
General Features	12
Operator Features	12
Alarm Features	13
Local annunciation, Telephone, Paging, and E-mail Features	14
Key Concepts	14
What Happens When an Alarm Occurs	16
DDE, SuiteLink, and Message Exchange	17
Disclaimer for Errors or Failures	17
Getting Started with SCADAlarm	17
Running SCADAlarm the First Time	17
Toolbar	18
Status Bar	19
Menu Commands	19
Logging on to SCADAlarm	21
Logging out of SCADAlarm	22
Exiting SCADAlarm	22
Configuring General Preferences for SCADAlarm	22
Configuration Overview	23

# CHAPTER 2: Notification Methods ......25

Local Annunciation	25
Configuring the Local Annunciation Repeat Delay	26
Voice Calling	26
Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters	27
Using SCADAlarm with Pulse Telephone Systems	29
Paging	29
Numeric Paging	29
Alphanumeric Paging	30
Voice Paging and Answering Machines	31
Configuring Paging Parameters	32
Using Paging Terminals	33
Connecting the Paging Terminal Hardware	34
Setting up the Paging Terminal	35
Add a Direct Connection to the Windows Modem List	35
Configure SCADAlarm to Use the Paging Terminal	39
Changing the Alphanumeric Paging Baud Rate	40
Adding a Delay to a Voice Pager Message	40

Manually Sending a Pager Message	40
E-mail Notification	42
E-mail Security Recommendations	43
Configuring E-mail System Parameters	44
Manually Sending an E-mail Message	45

# CHAPTER 3: Operators ......47

Operator Profiles	47
Operator Authentication	47
Creating an Operator Profile	49
Changing an Operator Profile	54
Deleting an Operator Profile	54
Calling Preferences for Operators	55
Configuring Calling Preferences for an Operator	55
Example Calling Preference for an Operator	57
Group On-Call Lists	58
Creating an Operator Group	59
Renaming an Operator Group	61
Deleting an Operator Group	62
Example Group On-Call List	63
Example Calling Sequence for an Operator Group	63

# CHAPTER 4: Alarm Tags ......65

Connection Types for Tags	65
Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database	66
Configuring Tag Properties for an Alarm Tag	68
Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag	70
Configuring Data Server Acknowledgment	72
Configuring On/Off Properties for an Alarm Tag	75
Configuring Alarm Properties for an Alarm Tag	77
Configuring Group Properties for an Alarm Tag	79
Alarm Notification for an "Also Notify" Operator Group	80
Configuring Numeric Properties for an Alarm Tag	81
Deleting an Alarm Tag	83
Testing an Alarm Tag	84
Alarm Tag Configuration Examples	85
Example: Annunciated/Dial-out Alarm Tag	85
Example: Analog "Information Only" Tag	87
Example: Discrete "Information Only" Tag	88
Example: Server Status Tag	89
Example: Acknowledge All Tag	90
Example: Disable SCADAlarm Tag	91
Example: Dead Phone Line Tag	91
Example: E-Mail Server Failure Tag	92
Example: Bad Login Attempts Tag	93
Example: Logged Caller Tag	93

Viewing and Editing Properties for Multiple Alarm Tags	94
Using the Tag-Vue Editor	94
Using the SCADAlarm Database Utility	96

# CHAPTER 5: Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment......97

	07
Interactive Voice Scripts for Alarm Reporting	
Creating an Interactive Voice Report Script	
Report Script Examples	101
Example 1: Simple Alarm Script	
Example 2: Discrete Alarm Script	103
Example 3: Data Acquisition Script	105
Example 4: Set-Point Change Script	106
Message Formats for Alarm Reporting	
Creating a Message Format	
Message Format Examples	110
Example 1: Alphanumeric Message Format	110
Example 2: Numeric-only Message Format	111
Example 3: Text-to-Speech Message Format	
Example 4: E-Mail Message Format	112
Alarm Acknowledgements	114
Acknowledging Alarms	114
HMI Software and Remote Acknowledgement	
Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters	115
Documenting an Alarm Test	117

### CHAPTER 6: Handling Incoming Voice

Devices for Incoming Voice Calls	119
Security for Incoming Calls	119
Telephone Menu Trees	120
Constructing a Telephone Menu Tree	122
Available Functions for a Menu Tree	124
Example Construction of a Menu Tree	125
Configuring the Delayed-Answer Ring Count	127

## 

Creating a Control Schedule	130
Adding or Deleting Control Schedule Entries	131
Creating or Deleting a Schedule File	131
Control Types for Schedules	132
Defining Holidays	133

### CHAPTER 8: Configuring the Telephone/Speech Driver ......135

125
135
135
136
138
140
142
143
143
144
144
146

### CHAPTER 9: Maintenance and Troubleshooting ......147

Backing Up a SCADAlarm Project	147
Saving Configuration Information to a File	148
Configuring System Parameters	148
Logging System Events	150
Enabling and Configuring Logging	150
Sending Log Reports via E-mail	151
Scheduling Log Reports	151
Adding a Log Report Request to a Menu Tree	153
Manually Entering Comments into the Log File	155
Viewing Status Information	155
Viewing System Status	155
Viewing Technical Support Information	157
Viewing Server Status	158
Debugging the Telephony State Driver	158
Performing a Phone Line Test	159
Configuring Automatic System Testing	160
Creating a System Test Operator Group	160
Specifying the System Test Operator Group	
Adding a System Test to the Control Schedule	162
Troubleshooting Common Problems	
Error: Device Not Working	163
Error: "License File Not Found"	163
Error: "Assign Fail"	163
Timing Issues with Numeric Pagers	163
Frequently Asked Questions	164
Contacting Technical Support	166

plications	167
Using SCADAlarm with InTouch	167
Configuring InTouch as the Data Server	. 168
Importing InTouch Alarm Definitions	. 168
Automatic Report Scripting for Imported InTouch Tags using I time Text-To-Speech	Real- 176
Configuring Discrete Alarms for InTouch	. 176
Configuring Analog Alarms for InTouch	. 177
Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement for InTouch	. 178
Configuring SCADAlarm to Start When WindowViewer Starts	. 180
Using SCADAlarm with Industrial Application Server	181
Configuring Industrial Application Server as the Data Server	. 181
Importing Tags from Industrial Application Server	. 182
Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement for IAS	. 187
Using SCADAlarm with Ci Technologies Citect®	. 189
Configuring Citect as the Data Server	. 189
Citect DDE Server Startup	. 190
Alarm Acknowledgement for Citect	. 190
Creating a Simulation Project	. 191
Configuring a Variable Tag in Citect	. 192
Configuring an Alarm Tag in Citect	. 192
Configuring a Citect Discrete Tag in SCADAlarm	. 194
Configuring a Citect Analog Tag in SCADAlarm	. 195
Using SCADAlarm with Intellution® iFIX®	. 195
Configuring iFIX as the Data Server	. 195
iFIX Startup Options and/or Requirements	. 196
Alarm Acknowledgement for iFIX	. 196
Configuring an Alarm Tag in iFIX	. 197
Configuring an Acknowledge Tag in iFIX	. 199
Configuring an iFIX Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm	. 201
iFIX VBA Samples	. 202
Using SCADAlarm with National Instruments® Lookout <sup>TM</sup>	. 203
Configuring Lookout as the Data Server	. 203
Lookout Startup Options and/or Requirements	. 203
Lookout Alarm Receipt to SCADAlarm	. 204
Alarm Acknowledgement for Lookout	. 204
Configuring a Discrete Alarm Tag in Lookout	. 204
Configuring an Acknowledge Tag in Lookout	. 206
Configuring a Lookout Discrete Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm	. 208
Configuring a Numeric Alarm Tag in Lookout	. 209
Configuring a Lookout Numeric Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm	. 210
Using SCADAlarm with Rockwell® Software RSView®32 <sup>™</sup>	. 210
Configuring RSView32 as the Data Server	211
RSView32 Startup Options and/or Requirements	211
Alarm Acknowledgement for RSView32	211
Configuring an Alarm Tag in RSView32	. 212
Configuring an RSView32 Discrete Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm	. 214

Using SCADAlarm with Siemens® SIMATIC® WinCC®	214
Configuring WinCC as the Data Server	215
WinCC Startup Options and/or Requirements	215
Alarm Acknowledgement for WinCC	
Configuring an Alarm Tag in WinCC	216
Configuring a WinCC Discrete Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm	
Configuring a WinCC Analog Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm	217

# APPENDIX A: Quick Reference

Information	21	9

What to Do When You are Called	219
Calling into the SCADAlarm System	219
Logging in over the Telephone	220
What to Expect during a Call	220

# APPENDIX B: Voice Prompt Script

Templates	223

Top Menu Voice Prompt File Script	224
Menu Voice Prompt File Script	225
Alarm, Tagname, and Miscellaneous Voice Prompt Scripts	

# 

Registry Entries	
SCADALRM.ini File	
System Parameters	
Telephone Driver Parameters	
Telephone Parameters	
System File Naming Conventions	
System Prompt File Contents	

Glossary	239
----------	-----

Index
-------

# **Before You Begin**

# **About This Guide**

This *SCADAlarm™ User's Guide* describes how to use SCADAlarm for alarm reporting and acknowledgement via local annunciation, voice calling, paging, and e-mail.

It is assumed that you are familiar with the HMI software that you want to use with SCADAlarm, as well as with general telephone, paging, and e-mail technologies.

# **Document Conventions**

This documentation uses the following conventions:

Convention	Used for
Initial Capitals	Paths and filenames.
Bold	Menus, commands, dialog box names, and dialog box options.
Monospace	Code samples and display text.

### CHAPTER 1

# **Getting Started**

To get started with SCADAlarm<sup>™</sup>, you will need to review main concepts and become familiar with the SCADAlarm software application.

### Contents

- About SCADAlarm
- Getting Started with SCADAlarm
- Configuration Overview

# About SCADAlarm

The Wonderware® SCADAlarm is an alarm notification system that interacts with various HMI/SCADA software programs to generate alarms, send notifications to operators using a variety of communication modes, and send acknowledgements back to the HMI/SCADA system. SCADAlarm requests data values from Windows applications ("servers") in order to send alarm acknowledgements back to the HMI/SCADA system. These Windows applications include Wonderware I/O Servers, Wonderware InTouch<sup>™</sup>, Industrial Application Server, Microsoft Excel, and so on.

SCADAlarm can communicate with any server that supports any of the following protocols:

- DDE
- SuiteLink
- Message Exchange (MX)

The data points include I/O tags that are linked to inputs and outputs from programmable controllers, process computers, and data from network nodes or memory tags (also called internal, or system, tags) that reside at the server only.

When a tag alarm value is reached, the SCADAlarm system can be configured to:

- Annunciate alarms locally. To provide in-plant annunciation, use an external speaker or amplifier.
- Call voice telephones.
- Send messages to pagers or cellular telephones.

Send e-mail.

SCADAlarm will perform these functions during their enabled times. The schedule can vary from day-to-day and can include holidays.

By using the SCADAlarm system, operators can acknowledge alarms, request status and numeric reports, or change set-points over the telephone. SCADAlarm administrators can change or rearrange voice menus and tag report scripts at any time, limit operator access to system configuration information, and limit access to the telephone menu functions.

### **General Features**

- Easy-to-use interface.
- Works with any Windows DDE and/or SuiteLink aware application. Also works with Industrial Application Server via the MX protocol.
- Supports multiple servers.
- Ability to enable/disable SCADAlarm from the server.
- Software licensing; no hardware key or dongles.
- Works with any hardware that supports TAPI.
- Automatic file upgrade from earlier versions.
- The SCADAlarm Sound File Conversion Utility (VCONVERT.exe) is provided that allows you to convert different voice modem formats to the RIFF file format (.wav) that is used by SCADAlarm.
- Adjustable maximum size for the SCADAlarm log file. The date can be included in the log file name.
- Ability to automatically schedule SCADAlarm system tests.
- "System alarms" that dial out in the event of a server failure, excessive failed login attempts, and so on.
- "System alarms" that notify the server in the event of a bad telephone line, and so on.
- Log comments, events, and errors to a printer or the log file.

### **Operator Features**

- One or more operators can be notified when an alarm is raised, cleared, or acknowledged.
- Operators can have individual IDs and PINs, two levels of security, a configurable greeting, and up to four telephone numbers or e-mail addresses.
- Automatic operator login or restricted login based on the caller's phone number.
- Configurable "on-call" operator list.
- Each operator has a personal schedule that determines the time, order, and method of alarm notification.

- Operators can call in to check process, acknowledge alarms, and/or change set-points over the telephone.
- Operators are alerted to existence of unacknowledged alarms at the beginning and end of the call.
- Configurable phone menu tree with individual voice prompts for each menu and security level.

### **Alarm Features**

- Each alarm/event can be independently directed to a specific group of operators.
- Tagnames do not have to be the same as the server item names, making it possible to have two different SCADAlarm tags pointing to same item name on the same or different servers.
- You can set up an alarm based on when the value is NOT equal to specified value.
- Operator(s) can be notified when an alarm clears/recurs or has been acknowledged.
- The alarm window appears as the top window, allowing easy acknowledgment.
- Each alarm/event has an adjustable alarm delay and alarm priority, which may be used to determine the order of notification.
- SCADAlarm can be configured to acknowledge HMI/SCADA system alarm points.
- SCADAlarm can access any field in HMI/SCADA database, allowing the SCADA system to make alarm decisions. You can use SCADAlarm to change set points in the HMI.
- Configurable tag report scripts define how a tag is reported and/or acknowledged.
- You can preview (listen to) a tag report script without having to trigger an alarm.
- The tag report script copy function saves you time by allowing you to replicate similar tag report scripts.
- Convert text to speech for alarm reporting.
- The Tag-Vue Utility allows you to view/modify the attributes of several tagnames simultaneously.
- You can specify a daily schedule and holidays.
- "Acknowledge-on-delivery" (one-shot alarming) is supported, which is designed for alarm/event notification without acknowledgement.
   "Acknowledge on clear" is also supported, which will automatically acknowledge an alarm when its alarm state clears. Use caution when implementing either of these options.

- The Database Utility is provided that allows you to import/export the SCADAlarm tag database to/from a comma separated value (.csv) text file. You can edit the .csv file using an editor or a spreadsheet program such as Microsoft Excel.
- Custom .wav files may be recorded that describe on state/off states of discrete tagnames. For example, "in alarm/cleared."
- Limits for data change values can be set over the telephone between userconfigured minimum and maximum values. Spoken decimal precision for up to six decimal places is configurable for each analog tagname.

## Local annunciation, Telephone, Paging, and Email Features

- Alphanumeric paging and SMS text messaging with TAP and UCP protocol support.
- Numeric-only paging.
- Voice paging. SCADAlarm can call voice pager, answering services, and answering machines.
- E-mail capability. Alarm messages and reports, scheduled or on-demand, can be e-mailed.
- Local audio annunciation (speaker or plant-wide) through standard computer audio systems (sound cards).
- Voice calling.
- Support for paging terminals.
- Record custom prompt messages and playback any message for easy review.
- Enable voice calls, paging, e-mail and/or local annunciation hours according to the default "Backup" operator group, if no one answers from the primary operator group.
- Adjustable number of rings before SCADAlarm will answer an incoming telephone call.
- Periodic telephone line test.

### **Key Concepts**

Before using SCADAlarm, review the following key concepts.

#### Operators

Operators are the people that are notified by SCADAlarm when an alarm occurs. Each operator is assigned a personal four-digit PIN and may have up to four contact methods. An operator's calling preferences define the order that his/her telephone numbers are dialed and when the operator is on-call. You can organize operators into group on-call lists, allowing you to notify a specific operator group when an alarm occurs. SCADAlarm will call each person on the list when an alarm occurs until someone acknowledges it.

#### **Notification Methods**

The notification method is how SCADAlarm will report the alarm. Available notification methods are local annunciation, voice calling, alphanumeric and numeric-only paging, voice paging, and e-mail.

#### SCADAlarm Alarms/Tags

The SCADAlarm tag database links SCADAlarm to any DDE or SuiteLink server, or to Industrial Application Server. SCADAlarm will "advise" the server that it is interested in these tag values, and the server will update SCADAlarm when the tag values change. Typically, the SCADAlarm tag database is a small subset of an HMI tag database. The server item name for each tag corresponds to the name of the data point in the HMI system, in the format the HMI system expects.

#### **Tag Report Scripts**

A tag report script defines the way you want a tag to be conveyed to the operator. In the event of an alarm, SCADAlarm will annunciate locally, and/or dial-out, executing the tag report script for the alarm. For example, the tag report script for an intrusion alarm might say:

"The status of the intrusion alarm is IN ALARM."

Numeric values may be included in tag report scripts so that operators can hear process values, such as a tank level. Scripts can include voice prompt files that describe current alarm and status conditions. Voice prompt files are sound files (.wav) that are created either using the recorder or a string of text (text-to-speech) and can played back using the SCADAlarm voice modem or local multimedia hardware. There are also pre-configured tag report script functions that allow you to acknowledge alarms and change set-point values over the telephone.

#### **Message Formats**

A message format defines how an alarm notification message from SCADAlarm will appear or sound when received on a telephone, pager, or via e-mail. These formats may contain variable placeholders for current data that is filled in at the time of the message delivery. SCADAlarm will automatically build pager, text-to-speech, and e-mail formats that are patterned after the alarm's tag report script, if a script has been configured. If not, a default format is used.

#### Menu Tree

A menu tree works like a standard voice mail system, where the person dialing in uses telephone dual-tone-multi-frequency (DTMF) keys to make selections. For each menu, you will need to create a voice prompt file describing the available keypad selections. For example, you can configure a "Top Menu" as follows:

"Top Menu: For active alarms, press ONE; For unacknowledged alarms, press TWO; To acknowledge all alarms, press THREE; For the set-point menu, press FOUR; To hang up, press ZERO."

**Note** The operator can use the telephone's dual-tone-multi-frequency (Touch Tone®) keys to access menus and data, and to change data. In this documentation, these keys are referred to as DTMF keys in order to distinguish them from computer keyboard keys, which are simply called keys.

### What Happens When an Alarm Occurs

The following steps outline what happens when an alarm from the server occurs. The exact steps that occur are based upon features that are enabled or disabled.

- 1. An alarm occurs.
- 2. The SCADAlarm **Alarm** window is displayed at the computer console. A list of currently unacknowledged alarms is displayed and an **Acknowledge** button is provided, allowing the operator to acknowledge the alarm from the computer console.
- 3. If local annunciation is enabled, the alarm will be annunciated locally. The tag report script for the active alarm will be spoken.
- 4. If voice dial-out is enabled, and the tag report script is an interactive voice script, SCADAlarm will call operators in the order specified in the on-call group list. SCADAlarm will annunciate the alarm over the telephone by speaking the tag report script for the active alarm.
  - A. If an operator receives a voice call from SCADAlarm, he/she will hear SCADAlarm announce itself. The operator will be prompted to log in using the operator ID and PIN that were configured by the SCADAlarm administrator.
  - B. The operator will get three chances to successfully log in.
  - C. The system will either respond with a greeting or fail to recognize the operator and start over again. After the operator is recognized, the main (or "top") menu will be spoken.
  - D. SCADAlarm will describe the menu tree options that are available to the operator. Specifically, an operator will hear an option, followed by the DTMF key. For example, "To hear active alarms, press 1."
  - E. In order for the SCADAlarm to consider its job complete, all alarms must be acknowledged.
- 5. If paging is enabled, SCADAlarm will send a pager message. If e-mail is enabled, SCADAlarm will send an e-mail. If the tag report script is a text-to-speech message, SCADAlarm will annunciate the alarm over the telephone by speaking the text-to-speech message for the active alarm.
  - A. Upon receiving the message from SCADAlarm, the operator will have a preset amount of time to call SCADAlarm on the telephone and acknowledge the alarm. When an operator calls SCADAlarm on the telephone, the login sequence and menu functions are generally the same as described in the previous steps. However, the operator may not be required to log in or may be restricted to call in from a certain number, depending on how the administrator has configured the operator's profile.

B. If the alarm is not acknowledged within the preset period of time, the system will call the next phone number in the operator's calling preferences, or contact the next operator on the group on-call list.

### DDE, SuiteLink, and Message Exchange

Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) is a communication protocol developed by Microsoft to allow applications in the Windows environment to send and receive data and instructions to and from each other. It implements a clientserver relationship between two concurrently running applications. The *server* application provides the data and accepts data requests from other applications. Requesting applications are called *clients*. Some applications, such as Wonderware InTouch and Microsoft Excel, can simultaneously be both a *client* and a *server*.

Wonderware SuiteLink uses a TCP/IP based protocol. SuiteLink is designed specifically to meet industrial needs, such as data integrity, high-throughput, and easier diagnostics. This protocol standard is only supported on the Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 or later operating system.

Message Exchange (MX) is a protocol used by Industrial Application Server for communication between platforms. It is not used for communications with data servers.

### **Disclaimer for Errors or Failures**

#### SCADAlarm cannot be responsible for external errors or failures.

SCADAlarm is designed to integrate seamlessly with all the services described in this user documentation and to be versatile enough to adapt to a wide variety of data sources and operator contact methods. If you have a problem, verify that everything besides SCADAlarm is operating correctly before calling technical support. Problems can occur due to pager companies who do not conform to industry standards or who have defects in their paging software. Also, incorrect telephone numbers or intermittent dial tones from the telephone company can cause problems. If SCADAlarm appears to be having trouble, be sure that the external calling, paging, and e-mail systems are working properly.

# Getting Started with SCADAlarm

Getting familiar with SCADAlarm includes starting SCADAlarm for the first time, logging in and out, learning about the SCADAlarm toolbars and menu commands, and setting program preferences.

## **Running SCADAlarm the First Time**

If SCADAlarm detects that data files from a previous version exist, it will convert any existing data files to the format required by the current version. A list of files and data that have been converted to the new SCADAlarm file format will be included in the log file. If data files form an earlier installation does not exist, SCADAlarm creates new data files.

#### To run the SCADAlarm for the first time

- 1. On the **Windows** start menu, point to **Programs**, point to **Wonderware**, point to the **SCADAlarm** program group, and then click **SCADAlarm**. The **Operator Information** dialog box appears.
- 2. Enter the desired information for the first operator.

For more information, see "Creating an Operator Profile" on page 49.

3. When you choose to save the first operator's data, the following dialog box may appear:



**Note** This dialog box is verifying whether a PIN Number of "0000" is OK to use. If it is not, you can change it now by clicking **No** or, you can change it later by selecting the **Change Operator** command on the **Maintenance** menu.

4. Once SCADAlarm has successfully started up, you will hear, "This is SCADAlarm".

### Toolbar

The SCADAlarm toolbar appears just below the menu bar.



The most commonly used functions are available from the toolbar:

Button	Use To
e	Log in or log out.
Ű	Send a page or e-mail, log a comment, or convert text to a .wav file.
	View the system status window.

Button	Use To
2	Add or modify an operator.
	Configure calling preferences.
0	Configure group on-call lists.
<b>9</b>	Configure alarm/tag definitions.
	Configure tag report scripts.
	Access the Tag-Vue spreadsheet.
Ē	Construct a telephone menu tree for operators.
<b>B</b>	Set the control schedule for SCADAlarm.

You can hide the toolbar. For more information, see "Configuring General Preferences for SCADAlarm" on page 22.

# **Status Bar**

The status bar describes the state of SCADAlarm program.

Idle..On Hook

Also, when you hover over a menu command with your mouse, the status bar displays information regarding the command.

# Menu Commands

The following tables describe all of the menu commands for SCADAlarm.

#### Access Menu

Command	Used to
Login	Log in to the SCADAlarm program.
Logout	Log out of the SCADAlarm program.
Calling Preferences	Configure the calling schedule for operators.
Send Page or Log Comment	Send a text message to a pager, an e-mail address, or to the SCADAlarm log file. Create a .wav file from a text message.

Command	Used to
System Status	View the status of SCADAlarm events and data servers, as well as information useful for reporting problems to Technical Support.
Exit	Close the SCADAlarm program.

#### Maintenance Menu

To access the Maintenance menu, you must first log in.

Command	Used to
Operator File	Create or change the profile for an operator.
Group On-call Lists	Create groups of operators.
Alarms / Tag Names	Create alarm tags in SCADAlarm.
Tag-Vue	Edit certain properties of multiple configured alarm tags at the same time.
Tag Report Scripts	Create the message that SCADAlarm will speak locally or over the telephone or send via a pager or e-mail to an operator when an alarm occurs.
Menu Tree	Create the telephone menu tree that operators will hear when they call in to SCADAlarm.
Schedule	Configure the dates and times that certain SCADAlarm functionality is enabled.

### **Configuration Menu**

To access the **Configuration** menu, you must first log in.

Command	Used to
Driver Configuration	Create voice prompts for alarm notification, configure options for the SCADAlarm voice modem, and select hardware devices to be used for the different types of alarm notification.
System Parameters	Configure system-wide parameters for logging, alarm acknowledgements, text-to- speech, SCADAlarm program preferences, telephone, paging, and e-mail notification, and other miscellaneous parameters.
Dump configuration to a File	Save the current SCADAlarm configuration to a file.

#### Help Menu

Command	Used to
Contents	Launch the Help file with the <b>Contents</b> pane displayed.
Index	Launch the Help file with the <b>Index</b> pane displayed.
Search	Launch the Help file with the <b>Search</b> pane displayed.
Wonderware Web Site	View the Wonderware home page in the default Internet browser for the local computer.
About	View version information for SCADAlarm.

# Logging on to SCADAlarm

#### To log on to SCADAlarm

1. On the Access menu, click Login. The Select-an-operator dialog box appears, displaying all operators with administrative privileges.

Select-an-operator	
001 Bill Monroe 002 James Jamerson 003 Nanci Griffith	Co <u>n</u> tinue
	Cance <u>l</u>
	4-digit <u>P</u> IN #

- 2. Select your name in the window.
- 3. In the **4-digit PIN** box, type the PIN that was assigned to you by the SCADAlarm administrator.
- 4. Click Continue.

All menus now become available.

**Note** If only one operator is configured, and that operator is using the default four-digit PIN, pressing the F3 key or selecting the **Login** command on the **Access** menu will automatically log that operator in.

## Logging out of SCADAlarm

**Note** The **Maintenance** and **Configuration** menus are unavailable when no operators are logged in at the computer console.

#### To log out of SCADAlarm

• On the Access menu, click Logout.

### **Exiting SCADAlarm**

Upon exiting, SCADAlarm will stop playing any sound files and hang up the telephone.

#### To exit (close) the SCADAlarm program

• On the Access menu, click Exit.

### **Configuring General Preferences for SCADAlarm**

#### To configure general preferences

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the **Preferences** tab.

<ul> <li>✓ Logging</li> <li>✓ Acknowledgements</li> <li>✓ Preferences</li> <li>✓ Text-to-Speech</li> <li>✓ Show Balloon Hints (tooltips)</li> <li>✓ Show Toolbar</li> <li>✓ Show Status bag</li> <li>✓ Minimize on Logout</li> <li>✓ Minimize on Start</li> </ul>	System Parameters			×
<ul> <li>✓ Show <u>B</u>alloon Hints (tooltips)</li> <li>✓ Show <u>I</u>oolbar</li> <li>✓ Show Status ba<u>r</u></li> <li>✓ Minimize on <u>L</u>ogout</li> <li>✓ Minimize on <u>S</u>tart</li> </ul>	🥒 Logging 📔 🖋 🖃 eMail 🗎 👒 Mi	Acknowledgements	🏀 Retrying ferences 🛛 💬	📰 Paging Text-to-Speech
Minimize on <u>S</u> tart	I⊽ Shov I⊽ Shov I⊽ Mirsir	w <u>B</u> alloon Hints (tooltips) w <u>T</u> oolbar Show Status ba <u>r</u>		
	E Minir	nize on <u>S</u> tart		

3. Select the appropriate check boxes.

#### Show Balloon Hints (tooltips)

If selected, balloon help will be available for items that have tooltips configured.

#### **Show Toolbar**

If selected, the toolbar will appear on the main menu bar.

#### **Show Status Bar**

If selected, the status bar will appear on the main menu bar.

#### **Minimize on Logout**

If selected, the SCADAlarm software interface will appear minimized after the current operator has logged out.

#### **Minimize on Start**

If selected, the SCADAlarm software interface will appear minimized when it starts.

4. Close the dialog box.

# **Configuration Overview**

Before you begin to use the SCADAlarm system, you will need to perform some configuration tasks. These tasks include configuring operators, adding operators to group on-call lists, adding tags to the SCADAlarm database, building tag report scripts for each applicable tag, building a menu tree, and configuring the control schedule.

SCADAlarm project configuration consists of the following general steps:

1. Select the device for each SCADAlarm function. For example, you could assign one device for paging and another device for voice calling.

For more information, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.

 Configure operators. SCADAlarm notifies operators in the event of an alarm. Each operator must have at least one configured contact method. SCADAlarm supports the following contact methods: voice telephone, numeric pager, alphanumeric pager or GSM phone, voice pager, and email.

For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."

3. Set up the calling preferences for each operator. The calling preferences define the order that the operator's telephone numbers are dialed and the times of day and days of week that the operator is on-call.

For more information, see "Configuring Calling Preferences for an Operator" on page 55.

4. (optional) Configure group on-call lists for your operators. You can configure SCADAlarm to notify a specific operator group when an alarm is detected. An operator may be a member of more than one group.

For more information, see "Group On-Call Lists" on page 58.

5. Add tags to the SCADAlarm database. Each tag added to SCADAlarm will create a data link to the server (typically an HMI/SCADA system).

For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."

6. Configure a tag report script for each alarm in your system. A tag report script defines the way you want the alarm to be verbally conveyed to the operator. When configuring tag report scripts, you will record voice prompt files with the SCADAlarm voice modem and use built-in scripting functions. In the event of an alarm, SCADAlarm executes the alarm's tag report script locally (local annunciation) and/or over the telephone.

For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."

Also, see "Voice Prompts" on page 135.

7. Configure message formats for each alarm in your system. Message formats define the message will appear on the recipient's pager or e-mail message, or will be played via text-to-speech. SCADAlarm automatically generates default formats, which you can edit. Formats may contain variable placeholders for live data that can be conveyed to the page recipient (for example, process values, alarm states, and so on).

For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."

8. Configure a telephone menu tree for your operators. The menu tree works like a typical voice mail system, allowing operators to navigate through the system using phone keys (DTMF keys) to make selections. For example, you may want to allow operators to hear all active alarms by pressing 1, hear all unacknowledged alarms by pressing 2, and acknowledge all alarms by pressing 3. Be sure to record a spoken menu file that accurately describes the options available to the operator. For example, the spoken menu file might contain this message, "For active alarms, press 1. For unacknowledged alarms, press 2. To acknowledge all alarms, press 3. To hang up, press 0."

For more information, see "Telephone Menu Trees" on page 120.

9. Create and save schedules that control how SCADAlarm functions during particular times.

For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

### CHAPTER 2

# **Notification Methods**

SCADAlarm can notify operators about alarms via the following methods: local annunciation, voice calling, paging, and e-mail.

### Contents

- Local Annunciation
- Voice Calling
- Paging
- E-mail Notification

# **Local Annunciation**

If an alarm occurs and local annunciation is enabled, SCADAlarm will annunciate the alarm's tag report script over the voice modem or computer speaker. An operator is expected to call in to SCADAlarm, log in (depending on the login style), traverse the menu tree, and acknowledge the alarm(s).

Follow these general steps to configure local annunciation:

- 1. Select the device used for local annunciation. For more information, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.
- Configure system parameters for local annunciation. For more information, see "Configuring the Local Annunciation Repeat Delay" on page 26.
- 3. Configure at least one operator that you want to be able to acknowledge the alarm. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 4. Create the alarm tag(s). For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."
- Create the tag report script that SCADAlarm will announce for the alarm tag. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."

Set up either an interactive voice script or a text-to-speech message. If you use an interactive voice script, SCADAlarm will not announce the parts of the script that require operator interaction.

- 6. Configure a telephone menu tree that the operator will use when he/she calls into SCADAlarm. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Handling Incoming Voice Calls."
- 7. Enable local annunciation in the SCADAlarm control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

## **Configuring the Local Annunciation Repeat Delay**

The local annunciation repeat delay controls how often the local annunciation (speaker output) is activated. The delay occurs between the first announcement and subsequent announcements.

#### To configure the delay

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the Miscellaneous tab.

System Parameters	×
🥒 Logging 📔 🖋 Acknowledgement 🖃 eMail 🛛 🧐	s   🎭 Retrying   🖭 Paging   Preferences   💯 Text-to-Speech
Local Annunciator Repeat delay (sec)	90 •
Delayed-answer Ring Count	5
<u>S</u> ystem-test Group	Backup
<u>N</u> umeric-page Test Message	[S]
Alphanumeric-page Test Message	Hello, [0], SCADAlarm is working

- 3. In the Local Annunciator Repeat Delay box, specify the amount of time, in seconds, between when local annunciation is activated.
- 4. Close the dialog box.

# Voice Calling

If an alarm occurs and voice calling is enabled, SCADAlarm will call a voice phone number for an operator and play the tag report script.

If the tag report script is a text-to-speech message (not text-to-speech in an interactive report script), the operator is expected to listen to the message, call in to SCADAlarm, log in (depending on the login style configured for the operator), traverse the menu tree, and acknowledge the alarm(s).

If the tag report script is an interactive voice script, the operator is expected to login and then acknowledge the alarm over the phone, or call SCADAlarm back and provide the acknowledgement, depending on how you have set up the report script.

Follow these general steps to configure voice calling:

- 1. Select the device used for voice calls. For more information, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.
- 2. Configure system parameters for voice calling. For more information, see "Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters" on page 27.
- 3. Configure at least one operator that you want to be able to acknowledge the alarm and specify a voice phone number as a contact method. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 4. Enable voice calling in the operator's calling preferences. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 5. Create the alarm tag(s). For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."
- 6. Create the tag report script that SCADAlarm will speak over the phone for the alarm tag. Specifically, set up either an interactive voice script or a text-to-speech message. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."
- 7. Configure a telephone menu tree that the operator will use when he/she calls into SCADAlarm. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Handling Incoming Voice Calls."
- 8. Enable voice calling in the SCADAlarm control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

## **Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters**

#### To configure telephone retrying parameters

1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.

2. Click the **Retrying** tab.

System Parameters	<
<ul> <li>eMail</li> <li>Miscellaneous</li> <li>Preferences</li> <li>Text-to-Speech</li> <li>Logging</li> <li>Acknowledgements</li> <li>Retrying</li> <li>Paging</li> <li>Everything (Voice Calls and Pages)</li> <li>Number of retries before moving on to next call</li> <li>2</li> </ul>	
Voice Calls Number of prompt repeats before disconnecting 3	
Wait to expect Ack Call (minutes) after Page 15 • after eMail 15 •	

3. In the **Number of retries before moving on to next call** box, specify the number of times SCADAlarm should try the same operator before moving on to the next available phone number or operator in the on-call list.

For example, if you specify one retry, operators with only one configured telephone number will be tried two times (one try and one retry), and an operator with two configured telephone numbers will be tried two times at each of the two telephone numbers.

4. In the Voice Calls area, configure the retry parameters for voice calls.

#### Number of prompt repeats before disconnecting

Specify the number of times SCADAlarm should repeat a menu prompt without receiving a DTMF key response from the operator before disconnecting.

#### Time between call retries

Specify the amount of time, in seconds, that SCADAlarm will wait before trying the next telephone number on the list, whether it is the same operator again at his or her primary or secondary telephone or moving on to the next operator in the on-call list.

5. In the **Wait to expect Ack Call** area, configure amount of time, in minutes, that SCADAlarm will wait for an acknowledgement after a page or e-mail is sent.

If this time expires without the alarm being acknowledged, SCADAlarm will retry the page or e-mail (if the retry count has not been exhausted) or move on to the next call.

6. Close the dialog box.

### Using SCADAlarm with Pulse Telephone Systems

SCADAlarm can be used with pulse telephone systems to call out (or dial out) only. With pulse systems, an operator can be called by SCADAlarm, but cannot log in or acknowledge the alarm. If the operator has access to a cellular or DTMF phone, then he/she can call in and operate SCADAlarm normally. If operators do not have access to a tone or DTMF phone, you should re-record the system ID file to give a more general announcement:

System ID File	Default Voice File	Change To
z_sys_id.wav	"This is SCADAlarm"	"There is an alarm at central processing plant located at 331 First Street, Good-bye,"

If your telephone requires the use of pulse dialing, select that property for your modem using the Phone and Modem utility in the Windows Control Panel. If it does not appear there, you must precede all operator telephone numbers with the letter "P," for pulse. For example: P555-1212.

# Paging

SCADAlarm can send alarm notifications to operators via voice pagers, numeric-only pagers, alphanumeric pagers, and paging terminals.

With all types of paging, once SCADAlarm determines that it has successfully notified an operator with a pager message, it will wait before paging again. The amount of time it will wait is specified by the **Wait to expect Ack Call after page** system parameter. For more information, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32.

If you are using multiple pager service providers, the lowest baud rate will apply to the system. The minimum level supported by SCADAlarm is the same as the minimum level supported in the TAPI specification.

# **Numeric Paging**

If an alarm occurs and numeric paging is enabled, SCADAlarm will call a numeric pager for an operator and leave a numeric message. The operator is expected to read the message and then call SCADAlarm, log in (depending on the login style configured for the operator), traverse the menu tree, and acknowledge the alarm within the specified amount of time.

Follow these general steps to configure numeric paging:

- 1. Select the device used for numeric paging. For more information, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.
- 2. Configure system parameters for paging. For more information, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32.
- 3. Configure at least one operator that you want to be able to acknowledge the alarm and specify a numeric pager number as a contact method. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."

- 4. Enable numeric paging in the operator's calling preferences. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 5. Create the alarm tag(s). For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."
- 6. Create the tag report script that SCADAlarm will send to the pager for the alarm tag. Specifically, set up a numeric pager message format. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."
- 7. Configure a telephone menu tree that the operator will use when he/she calls into SCADAlarm. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Handling Incoming Voice Calls."
- 8. Enable paging calls in the SCADAlarm control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

# **Alphanumeric Paging**

If an alarm occurs and alphanumeric paging is enabled, SCADAlarm will call an alphanumeric pager for an operator and leave a message. The operator is expected to read the message and then call into SCADAlarm, log in (depending on the login style configured for the operator), traverse the menu tree, and acknowledge the alarm within a specified amount of time.

Follow these general steps to configure alphanumeric paging:

- 1. Select the device used for alphanumeric paging. For more information, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.
- 2. Configure system parameters for paging. For more information, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32.
- 3. Configure at least one operator that you want to be able to acknowledge the alarm and specify an alpha pager number as a contact method. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 4. Enable alpha paging in the operator's calling preferences. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 5. Create the alarm tag(s). For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."
- 6. Create the tag report script that SCADAlarm will send to the pager for the alarm tag. Specifically, set up an alphanumeric pager message format. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."
- 7. Configure a telephone menu tree that the operator will use when he/she calls into SCADAlarm. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Handling Incoming Voice Calls."
- 8. Enable paging calls in the SCADAlarm control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

You can optionally set up a paging terminal to handle alphanumeric pages coming from SCADAlarm. For more information, see "Using Paging Terminals" on page 33.

### Voice Paging and Answering Machines

For voice paging, in the event of an alarm, the following events occur:

- 1. SCADAlarm will dial the voice pager telephone number.
- 2. When the phone is answered by the pager service provider, SCADAlarm will announce itself, speak its telephone number, and speak the tag report script for the alarm. Since this is a one-way conversation to the voice pager, no login is required.

SCADAlarm will only speak its telephone number if the **Include in voice page** system parameter is selected. For more information, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32.

3. SCADAlarm will speak the time of day, then hang up.

The operator is expected to listen to the message and then call into SCADAlarm, log in (depending on the login style configured for the operator), traverse the menu tree, and acknowledge the alarm within a specified amount of time.

Follow these general steps to configure voice paging:

- 1. Select the device used for voice paging. For more information, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.
- 2. Configure system parameters for paging. For more information, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32 and "Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters" on page 27.
- 3. Configure at least one operator that you want to be able to acknowledge the alarm and specify a voice pager number as a contact method. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 4. Enable voice paging in the operator's calling preferences. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 5. Create the alarm tag(s). For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."
- 6. Create the tag report script that SCADAlarm will send to the pager for the alarm tag. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."

Set up either an interactive voice script or a text-to-speech message. If you use an interactive voice script, SCADAlarm will not speak the parts of the script that require operator interaction.

- 7. Configure a telephone menu tree that the operator will use when he/she calls into SCADAlarm. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Handling Incoming Voice Calls."
- 8. Enable paging calls in the SCADAlarm control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

Configuring SCADAlarm to call a voice pager has other useful applications as well:

- Leaving a message on an answering machine: SCADAlarm will dial, announce itself, speak the alarm's tag report script, speak the time of day, then hang up. You may miss part of the tag report script due to your answering machine's outgoing message, but that can be adjusted by placing commas after the voice pager's telephone number. For more information, see "Adding a Delay to a Voice Pager Message" on page 40.
- Notifying an answering service: You may have a situation where you needs to call an answering service. In turn, the answering service employee would notify plant personnel that an alarm has occurred. It may not be desirable to require answering service employees to login to SCADAlarm. Configuring the answering service telephone number as a voice pager may be useful in this situation, since SCADAlarm will merely speak the alarm's tag report script then hang up, without requiring any interaction with the call recipient.

### **Configuring Paging Parameters**

#### To configure paging parameters

- 1. On the Configuration menu, click System Parameters.
- 2. Click the **Paging** tab.

System Parameters	
<ul> <li>eMail</li> <li>Miscellaneous</li> <li>Preferences</li> <li>Text-to-Speech</li> <li>Logging</li> <li>Acknowledgements</li> <li>Retrying</li> <li>Paging</li> </ul>	
SCADAlarm telephone number: SCADAlarm ☑ Include in voice page	
Maximum Alphanumeric Characters (80- <u>2</u> 24)	
Maximum Numeric-only digits ( <u>1</u> 0-30) <u>30</u> ✓ Allow <u>*</u> in Numeric page	
Maximum Items to Page in One Session (0-10) 5	
Alphanumeric Pager Protocol	
TAP/IXO (most common)	

3. In the **SCADAlarm telephone number** box, type the phone number that SCADAlarm uses to dial out.

The SCADAlarm phone number can be included in message formats. In message format, the [S] variable will reflect this phone number.

- 4. Select the **Include in voice page** check box to have SCADAlarm speak its telephone number when the voice page is delivered.
- 5. Configure the paging limits.

#### **Max Alphanumeric Characters**

The maximum number of characters that will be sent in a alphanumeric pager message.

#### Max Numeric-only Digits

The maximum number of digits that will be sent in a numeric-only pager message.

These parameters should match the maximum character/digit capacity of your particular paging service provider. When you configure the message format, you will be warned if these limits are exceeded. If you choose to exceed these limits anyway, the message will be truncated at page time and this fact will be logged.

#### Allow \* in Numeric page

Select this check box to allow asterisks (\*) to be included in a numericonly pager message. Most numeric pagers will display the asterisk (\*) character as a dash (-). Some paging service providers interpret an incoming asterisk as a request to terminate (or even cancel) the pager message. In these cases, deselect this check box in order to suppress all asterisks in numeric pager formats.

#### Max Items to page in one session

Used to limit the pager activity to a reasonable number of alarms in case a large number of alarms occur simultaneously.

For example, if this parameter were set to 5, and eight alarms were to be tripped, the first pager message sent will indicate that there are eight unack'ed alarms. The system would then send five pager messages, one for each of the first five alarms received. Set this parameter to 0 if you want only the number of active alarms to be sent to the pager.

6. In the **Alphanumeric Pager Protocol** area, configure the connection protocol used for all outgoing alphanumeric pager messages. Contact your paging service provider to determine which protocols are supported in your area.

#### TAP/IXO

The protocol that is used in the United States and abroad.

#### UCP/GSM

The protocol that is used mostly in Europe.

7. Close the dialog box.

## **Using Paging Terminals**

You can easily connect SCADAlarm directly to a paging terminal. Using a private terminal has several advantages. For example, lower long-term cost, direct control of subscribed pagers, higher paging frequency, and lower pager latency.

The following steps outline the main tasks in setting up a paging terminal for use with SCADAlarm:

1. Connect the hardware. For more information, see "Connecting the Paging Terminal Hardware" on page 34.

- 2. Set up your paging terminal. For more information, see "Setting up the Paging Terminal" on page 35.
- Add a direct connection to the Windows modem list. For more information, see "Add a Direct Connection to the Windows Modem List" on page 35.
- 4. Select the direct connection as alpha paging device for SCADAlarm. For more information, see "Configure SCADAlarm to Use the Paging Terminal" on page 39.
- 5. Make sure that each alpha pager access number for each operator is blank.

When an alarm condition or event is detected by SCADAlarm, SCADAlarm will call the first pager number configured on its call-out list (the paging terminal). The operator will receive the pager message that was transmitted by his/her on-site pager device.

### **Connecting the Paging Terminal Hardware**

SCADAlarm supports on-site paging terminals that use dedicated TAP- or UCP-compliant paging hardware. A paging terminal must be implemented using the manufacturer's TSP (if available) or TAPI's null-modem configuration.

 If required, use a null modem cable to connect the serial port of the SCADAlarm computer to the paging terminal's serial port. If the paging terminal's port is a DTE port (intended to connect to a modem, or DCE), a null modem cable is required. For more information, see the documentation for your paging terminal.

**Note** The following diagram assumes that no handshake signals are required by the paging terminal. For more information, see the documentation for your paging terminal. This cable has been tested with the Visiplex model VS3100 and was determined to be adequate.



2. Select the COM port you will use and connect this cable from that port to your alphanumeric paging terminal.

### Setting up the Paging Terminal

The port on the paging terminal to which SCADAlarm will be connected must be set to use the same paging protocol that SCADAlarm is using. Options are:

- TAP (or IXO)
- UCP (or GSM or SMS)

For more information on setting up the paging terminal, see the paging terminal documentation.

# Add a Direct Connection to the Windows Modem List

1. In the Windows Control Panel, click **Phone and Modem Options**. The **Phone And Modem Options** dialog box appears.

Phone And Modem Options	? ×		
Dialing Rules Modems Advanced			
The following modems are installed:			
Modem	Attached To		
TOSHIBA Internal V.90 Modem	COM3		
<u>Ag</u> a			
OK	Cancel Apply		

2. Click the **Modems** tab.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard	
Install New Modem Do you want Windows to detect your modem?	
	<ul> <li>Windows will now try to detect your modem. Before continuing, you should:</li> <li>1. If the modem is attached to your computer, make sure it is turned on.</li> <li>2. Quit any programs that may be using the modem.</li> <li>Click Next when you are ready to continue.</li> <li>Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list.</li> </ul>
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

3. Click Add. The Add/Remove Hardware Wizard dialog box appears.

- 4. Select the Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list check box.
- 5. Click Next. The Install New Modem dialog box appears.


- 37
- 6. In the **Models** list, select **Communications cable between two computers**.
- 7. Click Next. The Install New Modem dialog box appears.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard		
Install New Modem Select the port(s) you v	want to install the modem on.	
	You have selected the following modem: Communications cable between two computers On which ports do you want to install it? All ports Selected ports COM1	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

8. Select the COM port to which the paging terminal is connected.

9. Click Next. The Install New Modem dialog box appears.



Phone And Modem Options	
Dialing Rules Modems Advanced	
The following <u>m</u> odems are installed:	
Modem	Attached To
Communications cable between two computers	COM1
Internal V.90 Modem	СОМЗ
A <u>d</u> d <u>R</u> emo	ve <u>P</u> roperties
OKC.	ancel <u>Apply</u>

10. Click Finish. The Phone And Modem Options dialog box appears.

- 11. Remember the new name given by Windows to this device. You will need to select this name when you configure devices in SCADAlarm.
- 12. Click OK.

# Configure SCADAlarm to Use the Paging Terminal

### To configure SCADAlarm to use the paging terminal

- 1. Start SCADAlarm.
- 2. Specify the direct connection device that you configured in Control Panel to be the SCADAlarm alphanumeric paging device. For more information on selecting devices, see "Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions" on page 144.
- 3. Configure SCADAlarm to use the alphanumeric pager protocol that matches the protocol of your paging terminal's protocol. For more information, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32.

4. In the operator's contact method for alpha pagers, leave the Access Number option blank. SCADAlarm will then bypass the normal dialing sequence. The Alpha Pager ID option should be set to match the ID configured for a pager in the paging terminal. For more information on configuring paging options for operators, see "Creating an Operator Profile" on page 49.

### **Changing the Alphanumeric Paging Baud Rate**

Some alphanumeric paging service providers use slower baud rates (300 or 1200 baud) for their TAP/UCP access numbers. Contact your paging service provider and obtain the baud rate, bits, and parity settings.

SCADAlarm only supports three baud rate entries: 300, 1200, or 33600. If any other baud rate is specified, SCADAlarm will revert to 33600.

# To change the baud rate, bits, and parity settings within SCADAlarm

- 1. Shut down SCADAlarm.
- 2. Using a text-only editor (such as Notepad), open the SCADALRM.ini file. This file can be found in the SCADALRM application folder.
- 3. Find the environment variable named:

Pager Service Comm (RateParityBits)=33600E7

**Note** 33600E7 is the default value.

4. Edit this value as follows:

If the service provider requires 300 baud, change the line to:

Pager Service Comm (RateParityBits)=300E7

If the service provider requires 1200 baud, change the line to:

Pager Service Comm (RateParityBits)=1200E7

- 5. Save and close the SCADALRM.ini file.
- 6. Restart SCADAlarm.

### Adding a Delay to a Voice Pager Message

You can add a delay to a voice pager message by inserting one or more commas after the phone number. One comma adds a two second pause to the dialing sequence. For example, to add four additional seconds of delay before SCADAlarm speaks on an outgoing call, add , , \* (two commas followed by an asterisk) to the end of the voice pager phone number.

### Manually Sending a Pager Message

This feature can be used as a simple paging terminal. It is also a handy tool for testing pagers during the configuration of your SCADAlarm project.

#### To manually send a page

1. Configure at least one operator with a pager address.

For more information, see "Creating an Operator Profile" on page 49.

- 2. On the Access menu, select Send Page or Log Comment.
- 3. If you are not currently logged in as an administrator, you will be prompted to select your name from a list and provide your four-digit PIN to continue.

The Send a Page or Log a Comment dialog box appears.

4. Click the **Contents** tab.

Send a Page or Log a Comment	×
🥖 Content 📄 🧾 Send To 🖤 Convert to Audio	
Comment from Bill Monroe (001) Wed 7/28/2004 11:59am	
✓ Record this in the Log Submit	Comment
Enter your comment or page text here.	

5. In the text box, type the comment that you want to send to the pager.

**Note** If you are sending a message to a numeric-only pager, make sure to type in a numeric-only message.

6. Click the **Send To** tab.

Send a Page or Log a Comment 🛛 🗙		
🥖 Content  🖭 Send T	o 💯 Convert to Audio	
Alphanumeric Page	Numeric Page 003 Nancy Griffith	eMail 001 Kristen Cogburn
Flecord this in the Log	Submit	Skip Comment

7. In the **Alphanumeric Page** and/or **Numeric Page** list, select the desired recipients.

**Note** If no operators are available, verify the operator information and calling preferences.

- 8. To cancel the page, click Skip Comment.
- 9. To send the page, click **Submit**.

# **E-mail Notification**

If an alarm occurs and e-mail notification is enabled, SCADAlarm will send an operator an e-mail message, formatted according to either the format specified in the tag report script for the alarm tag, or to a default format if no tag report script is specified. The operator is expected to read the message and then call into SCADAlarm, log in (depending on the login style configured for the operator), traverse the menu tree, and acknowledge the alarm within a specified amount of time.

This e-mail will be sent at regular intervals (specified by the **Delay to Expect Ack Call after eMail** on the **Retrying** tab of the **System Parameters** dialog box) until the number of retries for the operator have been exhausted. After that, SCADAlarm will try the next contact method (if there is one) for the same operator, or the next operator on call, exactly as it does for any other contact method.

If you select the **Ack when delivered** option in the **Alarm** / **Tag Data Point Definition** dialog box, or in the **Tag-Vue** spreadsheet, the **Alarm** window to pop up only briefly. The e-mail is sent, which qualifies as delivery, so SCADAlarm acknowledges the alarm and the window disappears within moments (if no other alarms are present).

Follow these general steps to configure e-mail notification:

1. Verify that the TCP/IP protocol is installed.

Details regarding this procedure can be found in your Microsoft® Windows® documentation.

2. Verify that you have a secure Internet connection.

SCADAlarm's e-mail system will wait to send e-mail if there is no Internet connection. Because of this, be sure the Internet is connected whenever you need SCADAlarm to send e-mail.

**Important!** Wonderware is not responsible for any security-related problems, failures, entries, or benign or malicious attacks resulting from the use of SCADAlarm's e-mail features or the attachment of other devices or software to enable the use of SCADAlarm's e-mail features.

For more information, see "E-mail Security Recommendations" on page 43.

- 3. Configure system parameters for e-mail. For more information, see "Configuring E-mail System Parameters" on page 44.
- 4. Configure at least one operator that you want to be able to acknowledge the alarm and specify an e-mail address as a contact method. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."

- 43
- 5. Enable e-mail in the operator's calling preferences. For more information, see Chapter 3, "Operators."
- 6. Create the alarm tag(s). For more information, see Chapter 4, "Alarm Tags."
- Create the tag report script that SCADAlarm will send to the e-mail address for the alarm tag. Specifically, set up an e-mail message format. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."
- 8. Configure a telephone menu tree that the operator will use when he/she calls into SCADAlarm. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Handling Incoming Voice Calls."
- 9. Enable e-mail notification in the SCADAlarm control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

When e-mail is disabled, a caller requesting an e-mail report via the menu tree will hear "The e-mail request has been cancelled."

The typical use of this type of notification is to send e-mail to pager or cellular telephone providers that accept e-mail messages and announce the arrival of such messages by signaling the pager or telephone.

### **E-mail Security Recommendations**

Wonderware is not responsible for the security of your Internet access. Therefore, we make these recommendations, as a minimum:

- Use a firewall. This prevents unwanted external access from "outside" while connected to the Internet.
- Use a separate proxy server for e-mail. This provides an additional layer of protection from the Internet. Also, the Internet connection can be temporary, and the proxy server will dial up as needed. It is possible to configure a second modem on the same computer to dial out when a network connection is required, but this is not recommended. In any case, you should install the appropriate safeguards against malicious use, either externally or from within.
- To ensure the security of SCADAlarm users that do not use e-mail, a separately configured modem, *not the SCADAlarm modem*, must be used for all Internet access. Since SCADAlarm has control of the modem, the operating system will not allow another application to use it. By design, SCADAlarm cannot establish an Internet connection.

A complete discussion of Internet security is beyond the scope of this manual. Additional security steps can be taken. For more information, consult your system administrator or firewall documentation.

### **Configuring E-mail System Parameters**

You need to specify the e-mail server and the account that SCADAlarm will use to send e-mail to operators. Make sure that the e-mail server can handle the load generated by SCADAlarm. SCADAlarm is capable of generating tremendous amounts of e-mail, enough to keep a server very busy. Therefore, coordinate e-mail use with your system administrator.

#### To configure e-mail system parameters

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the eMail tab.

System Parameters
🥒 Logging 📔 🎻 Acknowledgements 🛛 🗞 Retrying 🛛 🖭 Paging 📔 💷 eMail 🛛 😼 Miscellaneous 🛛 🧼 Preferences 🛛 💯 Text-to-Speech 🗍
Mail (SMTP) Server <u>E</u> nable eMail <u>S</u> erver name or IP address
Login name eMail address this account
mylogin me@proxyemail.com
Send to Backup Jocute 100 Hours to 24 Jocute 100 Jocute
All eMail functions are disabled.

- 3. Select the **Enable eMail** check box to enable e-mail functionality for SCADAlarm.
- In the Server name or IP address box, type the name or IP address of your Internet service provider's outgoing (SMTP) e-mail server. For example, mail.nospam.com or 172.16.209.1.

If your Internet connection is frequently down, use the IP address, since that makes the connection easier to detect. If you know the server name, you can determine the IP address. Open a command prompt window and type ping ServerName.com. You will be able to see the IP address used by the **ping** command.

5. In the **Login name** box, type the login name for the e-mail account to use to send e-mail notifications.

A valid e-mail account is required.

6. In the eMail address box, type the address for the account.

7. Select the **cc: this account** check box to have a copy of every outgoing email sent to the account SCADAlarm is using.

If you select this option, you should log in periodically to the SCADAlarm e-mail account to read and delete e-mail.

**Note** No blind copies (bcc) are sent by SCADAlarm; all recipients can see who received e-mail.

8. Close the dialog box.

### Manually Sending an E-mail Message

#### To manually send an e-mail

- 1. On the Access menu, select Send Page or Log Comment.
- 2. If you are not currently logged in as an administrator, you will be prompted to select your name from a list and provide your four-digit PIN to continue.

The Send a Page or Log a Comment dialog box appears.

3. Click the **Contents** tab.

Send a Page or Log a Comment	×
🖋 Content 📘 Send To 💯 Convert to Audio	
Comment from Bill Monroe (001) Wed 7/28/2004 11:59am	
Frecord this in the Log     Submit     Skip Comment	
Enter your comment or page text here.	

4. In the text box, type the message that you want to send via e-mail.

5. Click the **Send To** tab.

Send a Page or Log a Cor	nment	×
🥖 Content	💯 Convert to Audio	
-Alphanumeric Page	Numeric Page (003 Nancy Griffith	eMail 001 Kristen Cogburn
Flecord this in the Log	Submit	Skip Comment

6. In the eMail list, select the desired recipients.

**Note** If no operators are available, verify the operator information and calling preferences.

- 7. To cancel the e-mail, click **Skip Comment**.
- 8. To send the e-mail, click **Submit**.

# **Operators**

Operators are the people that are notified by SCADAlarm when an alarm occurs. Each operator is assigned a personal four-digit PIN and may have up to four contact methods. An operator's calling preferences define the order that his/her telephone numbers are dialed and when the operator is on-call. You can organize operators into group on-call lists, allowing you to notify a specific operator group when an alarm occurs. SCADAlarm will call each person on the list when an alarm occurs until someone acknowledges it.

### Contents

- Operator Profiles
- Calling Preferences for Operators
- Group On-Call Lists

# **Operator Profiles**

An operator profile contains basic information, such as the name of the operator, operator ID number, personal identification number (PIN), permission level, greeting file, and how the operator will be contacted in the event of an alarm.

# **Operator Authentication**

SCADAlarm assigns each operator a unique ID code. Also, you can assign each operator a security PIN. There are three scenarios in which operator authentication is required:

- SCADAlarm calls the operator at one of the voice phone numbers configured in the operator's profile.
- The operator calls SCADAlarm.
- The operator wants to configure the SCADAlarm software.

If SCADAlarm calls an operator, the operator will always be required to log in.

In order to log in to configure the SCADAlarm software program, an operator must be assigned administrative privileges. The operator is required to provide an ID code and PIN when logging on to the SCADAlarm software.

If the operator calls SCADAlarm on the telephone, the authentication required depends on how you have configured the login style for all of the operator's voice phone contact methods. Options for the login style are: normal, automatic, and restricted.

#### "Normal" Login

The operator who calls SCADA larm will be prompted to provide his/her operator ID code and PIN. The operator can be calling from any phone; it does not have to be the same phone number specified as the voice phone contact method.

For example:

Phone Number	Login Type	Authentication
222-2222	Normal	Operator is prompted for ID and PIN.
333-3333	Normal	Operator is prompted for ID and PIN.

#### "Automatic" Login

The operator will not have to provide the ID code and PIN, as long as he/she is calling from the voice phone that is specified as the voice phone contact method. However, if the phone blocks calling party identification (CPID) delivery, the operator will have to provide the ID code and PIN.

For example:

Phone Number	Login Type	Authentication
333-3333	Normal	Operator is prompted for ID and PIN.
444-4444	Automatic	Operator is automatically logged in.
555-5555 (CPID blocked)	Automatic	Operator is prompted for ID and PIN.

Calling party identification (CPID), also called "Caller ID<sup>TM</sup>," is the process by which the identity of the call origination station is made known to SCADAlarm by the local telephone service provider equipment. CPID is a feature provided by the service provider; it is not automatically available.

SCADAlarm matches the CPID information with the number that is configured in the operator profile. The number of characters required for the match is specified by the **Number of rightmost characters for CPID match** system parameter in the SCADAlarm.ini file. By default, there is no entry in the file. However, the default is set to 7, causing SCADAlarm to require a match on the last seven digits of the caller ID delivered to SCADAlarm. To have SCADAlarm perform a match for a typical area code plus seven-digit phone number, add the following entry in the SCADAlarm.ini file in the System Parameters section.

[System Parameters]

Number of right most characters for CPID match=10

You can adjust this value to specify more or fewer numbers. For example, you might want to increase the value to 11 to accommodate a country code.

### "Restricted" Login

The operator who calls SCADAlarm will be prompted to provide his/her operator ID code and PIN. The operator must be calling from the phone number configured to have the restricted login or from a phone number configured to have an automatic login. If the operator calls from any numbers configured to have a normal login, the login will fail.

For example:

Phone Number	Login Type	Authentication
333-3333	Normal	Operator is prompted for ID and PIN. However, the operator will not be logged in because he/she is not calling from the restricted or automatic number.
444-4444	Automatic	Operator is automatically logged in.
666-6666	Restricted	Operator is prompted for ID and PIN.

# **Creating an Operator Profile**

You can create a maximum of 250 operator profiles.

### To create an operator profile

1. On the Maintenance menu, point to Operator File and then click New Operator. The Edit / Change Operator Information dialog box appears.

2. Click the **Identification** tab.

Edit / Change Operator Information
🔮 Identification 🐉 How to Contact
Name
Bill Monroe
<ul> <li>This operator has <u>Administrator privileges</u></li> <li>Notify when this operator goes on-<u>call</u></li> </ul>
<u>3</u> -digit Operator ID code
4-digit PIN number
<u>G</u> reeting Speech
Hello Bill.wav
New: Bill Monroe Done

- 3. In the Name box, type the name of the operator.
- 4. Select the **This operator has Administrator privileges** check box if you want this operator to be able to perform administrative tasks within the system.

You can design your SCADAlarm system to limit access of certain control functions over the telephone, such as set-point changes and so on, to only operators with administrator privileges.

For more information, see "Telephone Menu Trees" on page 120.

5. Select the **Notify this operator when on-call** check box if this operator is to be notified when he/she becomes available according to the SCADAlarm schedule.

The SCADAlarm system can be configured to send a one time only notification to the operator's first available contact method (determined by the operator's calling preferences) when he/she becomes available according to the schedule.

6. In the Security area, configure the security code and PIN for the operator.

#### **3-digit Operator ID code**

A unique 3-digit operator ID that SCADAlarm automatically assigns to each operator. This number must be keyed in by the operator via DTMF keys in order to log in to the system on the telephone. You may modify the operator's 3-digit ID only when an operator is first created. Once the operator information is saved, this ID cannot be changed. SCADAlarm supports values between 001 to 999.

#### 4-digit PIN number

A personal identification number (PIN) to be keyed in by the operator via DTMF keys in order to log in to the system on the telephone or typed in from the computer keyboard when logging in at the computer console. The PIN is also required for administrators to gain entry to the system maintenance and configuration functions from the computer console.

Use care when typing a PIN number in this entry box. Each number you type is displayed back as a "#" (pound sign).

If you configure an operator with the default PIN, SCADAlarm will ask you to confirm this action. The default PIN is "0000." You should change it to a unique number for each operator, and be sure each operator knows his or her operator number and PIN. Click **Yes** to continue using the default PIN. Click **No** to go back and change the PIN.

7. In the **Greeting Speech** box, specify a voice file (.wav) that contains the greeting for this operator or a text file (.txt) that will be spoken using text-to-speech.

The greeting speech is spoken after the operator successfully logs in over the telephone. For example, the greeting file "Hello Bill.wav" might say: "Hello Bill, welcome to SCADAlarm."

To select a voice file (.wav) or create a new file, double-click in the box or right-click in the box and click **Browse or Record New Speech File**. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears in which you can select or record a prompt. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

To select a text-to-speech (.txt) file or create a new file, right-click in the box and click **Browse or Create New Text File**. The **SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files** dialog box appears in which you can select or create a text-to-speech file. For more information, see "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

8. Click the How to Contact tab.

Edit / Change Operator Information
🔮 Identification 🗇 How to Contact
_ <u>I</u> elephone Numbers / eMail Address
Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111) Alpha Pager (Alpha, Pager: 333444@1-800-555-9999)
Bill's eMail (eMail: bg@kentucky.net) (none)
Contact 2
Type Alpha. Pager
Comment Alpha Pager
Access Number 1-800-555-9999
Alpha Pager ID 333444
Bill Monroe is on call. Done

The **Telephone Numbers / eMail Address** window displays all of the configured contact methods for the operator. Each operator may have up to four configured contact methods, such as telephone numbers and/or e-mail addresses.

The phone number entries do not determine the order in which these phone numbers are dialed. The order that these numbers are dialed is specified by an operator's calling preferences. For more information, see "Calling Preferences for Operators" on page 55.

- 9. In the Telephone Numbers / eMail Address window, click (none).
- In the Type list, click the method that SCADAlarm will use to notify the operator. Available options are: Voice Phone, Numeric Pgr, Alpha. Pager, Voice Pager, or eMail.

**Note** If you are using a GSM phone, use the alphanumeric pager contact method.

The options in the **Contact** area of the dialog box will change, depending on the contact method that you have selected.

11. In the **Comment** box, type a description for the contact method. For example, "Bill's Numeric Pager," or "Bill's Cell Phone."

12. If you selected the voice phone, numeric pager, or voice pager method, in the **Phone Number** box, type the phone number to be dialed.

Some telephone systems do not provide a dial tone until a digit is dialed. In this case, when SCADAlarm attempts to dial out, it will indicate that NO DIALTONE is present and abort the attempt. The "blind dialing" feature allows SCADAlarm to attempt a dial out even if no dial tone is present. To enable blind dialing, add an "N" as the first character of the phone number. For example, to dial 5551212, type N5551212 for the phone number.

- 13. If you selected voice phone, in the **Login Style** list, select how the operator will be authenticated over the phone. For more information, see "Operator Authentication" on page 47.
- 14. If you selected the alphanumeric pager method, configure the access number and alpha pager ID.

SCADAlarm supports the following TAP and UCP text paging standards:

- TAP (Telocator Alphanumeric Protocol) specification, Version 1.8.
- ETSI TR 101 632 v6.0.0 (1999-04) GSM 03.39 v6.0.0 1997

**Note** For GSM phones, the alpha pager ID is sometimes referred to as the address code. The address code is usually the voice telephone number of the GSM phone.

#### Access Number

The telephone number that your alphanumeric paging service provides for modems (such as the SCADAlarm modem) to connect to. When this number is called, the paging service computer asks SCADAlarm for the alpha pager ID.

#### **Alpha Pager ID**

The direct access number for the pager (sometimes printed on a sticker on the back of the pager), without hyphens or the area code.

For example, your pager has a sticker that says 707-333-4444, and the Paging Service invoice tells you that all of your pagers are accessed at (800) 555-9999.

For example:

Number on Pager Sticker	Pager ID	Alpha Pager Access Number
707-333-4444	3334444	1-800-555-9999

15. If you selected the e-mail method, in the **eMail Address** box, type the operator's e-mail address.

16. Click Done.

### **Changing an Operator Profile**

### To change an operator profile

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, point to **Operator File** and then click **Change Operator**. The **Select-an-operator** dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the operator's name in the list and then click **Continue**.
- 3. When prompted to confirm, click **OK**. The **Edit / Change Operator Information** dialog box appears.
- 4. Make any required changes to the operator definition.

All of the options are the same as for adding an operator. For more information, see "Creating an Operator Profile" on page 49.

5. Click Done.

# **Deleting an Operator Profile**

You cannot delete yourself nor an operator who is a member of an on-call group.

### To delete an operator profile

1. On the **Maintenance** menu, point to **Operator File** and then click **Delete Operator**. The **Select-an-operator** dialog box appears.

Select-an-operator	
001 Bill Monroe 002 James Jamerson 003 Nanci Griffith	Co <u>n</u> tinue
	Cancel

- 2. Select the operator's name in the list and click **Continue**. The **Confirm Action** dialog box appears.
- 3. Click OK.

# **Calling Preferences for Operators**

An operator may carry an alphanumeric pager, numeric-only pager, cellular phone, and have an e-mail account. The order in which these "contact methods" are called and the time of day that they are enabled are configured via the on-call preferences schedule for each operator.

The SCADAlarm control schedule overrides all on-call preference schedules. For example, if paging calls are disabled in the control schedule, no operators will ever be paged, regardless of how their on-call preference schedules are configured. For more information on control schedules, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

**Important!** As schedules become more complicated, it is possible to have "holes" in your schedule, where no operators are available (that is, where no one is on-call for a period of time). It is recommended that you configure at least one operator to always be on call and make this operator a member of the Backup operator group. If SCADAlarm detects an alarm and cannot contact an available on-call operator, it will "rollover" to the Backup group.

# **Configuring Calling Preferences for an Operator**

### To configure calling preferences for an operator

1. On the Access menu, click Calling Preferences. The Select-an-operator dialog box appears.

Select-an-operator	
001 Bill Monroe 002 James Jamerson 003 Nanci Griffith	Co <u>n</u> tinue Cance <u>l</u>
	4-digit <u>PIN #</u>

- 2. Click the name of the operator whose schedule you want to configure.
- 3. In the **4-digit PIN** # box, type the personal identification number that was assigned to the selected operator. This option will not appear if you have already logged in as an administrator, since administrators can edit all of the settings (profile, on-call preferences, etc) for any operator. An operator that does not have administrative privileges is only allowed to edit his/her own on-call preferences.

On-call Preferences Schedule for Operator1 (004)	_ D ×
Saturday Sunday 12:00am	🇞 Daily <u>S</u> equence 📴 <u>W</u> eek
1 Voice Phone: 555-555-5555 Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday	On or after 12:00A 💼 Berrove
12:00am 1 Voice Phone: 555-555-5555	1 Try First Voice Phone: 555-555-5555
	2 Try Second
	3 Try Third
	none -
	• none •
	None (off) All Done
On the first try, use this to contact this operator.	

4. Click **Continue**. The **On-call Preferences Schedule** dialog box appears.

By default, the Monday through Friday schedules are shared, and the Saturday and Sunday schedules are shared.

5. Click the **Daily Sequence** tab.

🗞 Daily Sequence 📴 Week
On or af <u>t</u> er 12:00A
<u>1</u> Try First
Voice Phone: 555-555-5555
2 Try Second
- none -
3 Try Third
- none -
4 Try Fourth
• none •
None (off) All Done

- 6. In the **On or after** box, type or select the date that the schedule entry will be in effect.
- 7. In the Try First through Try Fourth lists, select a method of contact.

These options determine the order in which the contact methods will be used for the associated time in the schedule.

8. Click None (off) to reset all of the contact methods back to -none-.

- 9. Click All to add all of the configured contact methods for this operator to this time period on the schedule.
- 10. Click **Remove** to remove the selected entry in the schedule window from the schedule.
- 11. Click the Week tab.



12. In the **Shared schedules** area, select the days of the week for which you want the current schedule to be enabled.

The same schedule will be enabled for the days that you have selected. You can see the schedule added under the appropriate day(s) in the main schedule window. Thus, the same schedule is "shared" between multiple days.

13. In the **Days Off** area, select the days of the week that the operator should not be called.

If an alarm occurs, the operator will not be notified on his/her day(s) off.

- 14. Click the Daily Sequence tab.
- 15. Click Done.

### Example Calling Preference for an Operator

In the following example, Operator #001 (Bill Monroe) has been configured with three contact methods. On Monday through Friday, there are three schedule entries. At 8:00 a.m., Bill would like to be paged on his alpha pager only. At 5:00 p.m., he leaves the plant, and would like to be notified in the following order: alpha pager, voice phone (his cell phone), and e-mail. Finally, at 9:45 p.m., he is home and would like to be notified on his cell phone only. Bill has the weekend off.

On-call Preferences Schedule for Bill Monroe (001)	
<ul> <li>On-call Preferences Schedule for Bill Monroe (001)</li> <li>Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday         <ol> <li>12:00am</li> <li>Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111)</li> <li>8:00am</li> <li>Alpha Pager (Alpha. Pager: 333444@1-800-555-9999)</li> <li>5:00pm</li> <li>Alpha Pager (Alpha. Pager: 333444@1-800-555-9999)</li> <li>2 Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111)</li> <li>3 Bill's eMail (eMail: bg@kentucky.net)</li> <li>9:45pm</li> <li>1 Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111)</li> </ol> </li> <li>Days Off</li> <li>Sunday</li> <li>Saturday</li> </ul>	Daily Sequence  Week On or after 5:00P Emove 1 Try First Alpha Pager (Alpha. Pager: 333444@1-800-555-5  2 Try Second Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111)  3 Try Third Bill's eMail (eMail: bg@kentucky.net)  4 Try Fourth
	· none ·

The following screen shows how Bill's on-call preference at 5:00 p.m. is configured.

The following screen shows how Bill's weekly schedule is configured.

On-call Preferences Schedule for Bill Monroe (001)		_ 🗆 🗵
Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday 12:00am 1 Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111) 8:00am 1 Alpha Pager (Alpha. Pager: 333444@1-800-555-9999)	Shared schedules	Days off
5:00pm 1 Alpha Pager (Alpha, Pager: 333444@1-800-555-9999) 2 Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111) 3 Bill's eMail (eMail: bg@kentucky.net) 9:45pm 1 Cell Phone (Voice Phone: 555-1111) Days Off	I Wednesday I Wednesday I Tuesday I Wednesday I Thursday	Tuesday
Sunday Saturday	I Friday ☐ Saturday	☐ Friday ☑ Saturday

# **Group On-Call Lists**

A group on-call list defines a group of operators. An operator may belong to more than one group. Operators are called only if they are available according to their calling preferences schedule.

When defining an alarm tag, you must assign a call group for the alarm. For example, you could configure your system to call operators in the Security group if an intrusion alarm occurs and to call operators in the Maintenance group if a pump failure alarm occurs. For more information, see "Configuring Group Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 79.

If your system does not require multiple on-call groups (all alarms may notify the same group of operators), just use the default on-call group named "Backup." There is no need to add any new on-call groups.

### **Creating an Operator Group**

You can create a maximum of 250 operator groups.

### To create an operator group

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Group On-Call Lists. The Group Oncall Lists dialog box appears.

oup On-call List: <u>G</u> roup Backup	5	<mark>▼ <u>N</u>ew Rena<u>m</u>e De</mark>	lete
<u>S</u> poken Grou	p Name		
⊂Operators NO <u>T</u> i 002 Bill Monroe	> <u>A</u> dd to Group > n this group	<u>ALL</u> Chese Operators are ON <u>CALL</u> 001 Demonstration Mode	
			)one

2. Click New. The New Group Name area appears.

Group New Group Name	
New Group	Set

3. Type the name of the group and click Set.

Group On-call Lists
Group
MyNewGroup  Mew Rename Delete
Also, if no one in this group acknowledges, continue to the Backup Group
Spoken Group Name
> Add to Group > < Remove from Group <
Operators NOI in this group
UU2 Bill Monroe
Done

4. Select the **Also**, if no one in this group acknowledges, continue to the **Backup Group** check box if you want the on-call list to "roll over" to the Backup group if no one in the current on-call group acknowledges the alarm(s). In effect, the Backup group is added to the end of the current group to make one large group.

5. In the **Spoken Group Name** box, type the name of the voice prompt file or text-to-speech file that describes the name of the operator group. This file will be spoken whenever group-related menu functions are accessed over the telephone.

To select a voice file (.wav) or create a new file, double-click in the box or right-click in the box and click **Browse or Record New Speech File**. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears in which you can select or record a prompt. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

To select a text-to-speech (.txt) file or create a new file, right-click in the box and click **Browse or Create New Text File**. The **SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files** dialog box appears in which you can select or create a text-to-speech file. For more information, see "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

- 6. To add an operator to the **These Operators are ON CALL** window, select the name in the **Operators NOT in this Group** window and perform any of the following:
  - Click Add to Group >.
  - Right-click and then click Add to Group.
  - Double-click the name.
  - Drag-and-drop the operator name to the new window.
- 7. To order the operators in the **These Operators are ON CALL** window, perform any of the following:
  - Drag-and-drop the operator name to the new position in the list.
  - Select the operator name and then use the up and down arrows to change the position.
  - Right-click on the operator name and then click **Move Up** or **Move Down**.
- To change operator calling preferences, right-click on the operator name in either window and then click Edit Call Preferences. The On-call Preferences Schedule dialog box appears. For more information, see "Calling Preferences for Operators" on page 55.
- To change operator information, right-click on the operator name in either window and click Edit Operator Data. The Edit / Change Operator Information dialog box appears. For more information, see "Changing an Operator Profile" on page 54.
- 10. Click Done.

### **Renaming an Operator Group**

#### To rename an operator group

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Group On-Call Lists**. The **Group On-call Lists** dialog box appears.
- 2. In the list box in the Group area, click the name of the group to rename.

- 3. Click Rename.
- 4. In the New Group Name box, type the new name of the group.
- 5. Click Set.
- 6. Click Done.

### **Deleting an Operator Group**

#### To delete an operator group

- 1. On the Maintenance menu, click Group On-Call Lists. The Group Oncall Lists dialog box appears.
- 2. In the list box in the **Group** area, click the name of the group to delete.
- 3. Remove all of the operators from the **These Operators are ON CALL** window.
- 4. Click **Delete**. You will be prompted to verify the deletion.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Click Done.

### **Example Group On-Call List**

In this example, if an alarm occurs and the "Water Operators" group is configured to be notified, operator #002 will be notified first. If operator #002 does not properly acknowledge the alarm, then operator #003 will be notified. If operator #003 also fails to acknowledge the alarm, then SCADAlarm will start over at the top of the list. SCADAlarm will continue to "loop" through the on-call group list until the alarm is acknowledged.

Group On-call Lists
Group
Water Operators New Rename Delete
If no one is on call in this group, the Backup Group will be called.  Also, if no one in this group acknowledges, continue to the Backup Group
Spoken Group Name Water Operator Group.wav
> Add to Group > < Remove from Group <
Operators NO <u>I</u> in this group       These Operators are ON <u>CALL</u> 001 Bill Monroe       002 James Jamerson         003 Nanci Griffith
Done

### **Example Calling Sequence for an Operator Group**

In this example, the WaterOperators group contains four operators: Operator1, Operator2, Operator3, and Operator4, in that order. The operators have the following configured contact methods:

- Operator1: Voice phone and e-mail
- Operator2: Alphanumeric pager
- Operator3: Voice phone (home) and voice phone (mobile)
- Operator4: Voice phone and alphanumeric pager

For the calling preferences for each operator, all devices are enabled. For more information, see "Calling Preferences for Operators" on page 55.

The following telephone retry parameters have been configured for SCADAlarm:

Parameter	Value
Number of retries before moving on to next call:	1
Time between call retries (sec):	40
Wait to expect Ack Call after Page (min):	15
Wait to expect Ack Call after eMail (min):	10

For more information on retry parameters, see "Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters" on page 27.

When an alarm that is assigned to this group is detected, the system will dial out as follows, until the alarm is acknowledged. Assume for this example that the alarm is not acknowledged properly in order to illustrate the calling sequence.

- 1. Call the voice phone for Operator1.
- 2. After 40 seconds, call the voice phone for Operator1. (One retry is configured, and the time between call retries is set to 40 seconds.)
- 3. After 40 seconds, send Operator1 an e-mail. (All retries on the voice phone are used up. Move on to the next contact device, which is e-mail.)
- 4. After 10 minutes, send Operator1 an e-mail. (The **Wait to expect Ack** Call after eMail option is set to 10 minutes.)
- 5. After 10 minutes, call the alphanumeric pager for Operator2. (All contact methods for Operator1 have been exhausted. Move on to the next operator in the list.)
- 6. After 15 minutes, call the alphanumeric pager for Operator2 . (The Wait to expect Ack Call after eMail option is set to 15 minutes.)
- 7. After 15 minutes, call the voice phone (home) for Operator3.
- 8. After 40 seconds, call the voice phone (home) for Operator3.
- 9. After 40 seconds, call the voice phone (mobile) for Operator3.
- 10. After 40 seconds, call the voice phone (mobile) for Operator3.
- 11. After 40 seconds, call the voice phone for Operator4.
- 12. After 40 seconds, call the voice phone for Operator4.
- 13. After 40 seconds, call the alphanumeric pager for Operator4.
- 14. After 15 minutes, call the alphanumeric pager for Operator4.
- 15. After 15 minutes, call the voice phone for Operator1. The sequence will repeat until the alarm is acknowledged.

# Alarm Tags

The SCADAlarm tag database links SCADAlarm to any DDE or SuiteLink server, or to Industrial Application Server. SCADAlarm will "advise" the server that it is interested in these tag values, and the server will update SCADAlarm when the tag values change. Typically, the SCADAlarm tag database is a small subset of an HMI tag database. The server item name for each tag corresponds to the name of the data point in the HMI system, in the format the HMI system expects.

### Contents

- Connection Types for Tags
- Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database
- Deleting an Alarm Tag
- Testing an Alarm Tag
- Alarm Tag Configuration Examples
- Viewing and Editing Properties for Multiple Alarm Tags

# **Connection Types for Tags**

The connection type defines the source for the tag and the type of tag. Typically, the source of a SCADAlarm tag will be the server for an HMI software package, and the type will be "Get Data from <Server Name>."

In addition, SCADAlarm provides various "system" tags, which are described in the following table:

Connection Type	Use To
Data Server Status with <server name=""></server>	Monitor the state of server (HMI) "health" and provide notification if a failure has occurred.
Ack All Alarms from <server name=""></server>	Acknowledge all alarms from the HMI.
Disable SCADAlarm from <server name=""></server>	From the HMI, disable SCADAlarm for a specified number of minutes.
Dead Phone Line: notify <server name=""></server>	Notify the server (HMI) if the phone line has failed.
eMail Server Failure: notify <server name=""></server>	Notify the server (HMI) if the e-mail server has failed.

Connection Type	Use To
Bad Login Attempts: notify <server name=""></server>	Notify the server (HMI) if an excessive number of bad logins are attempted.
Logged Caller: notify <server name=""></server>	Display the name of the operator that is currently logged in over the telephone.

# Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database

For information on using the SCADAlarm tag importer to import tags from InTouch or Industrial Application Server, see Chapter 10, "Integration with HMI Applications."

#### To add a tag to SCADAlarm

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [10 are defined]	×
(new digital data)	
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🕅 On / Off	
Alarm / Tag	
Name Value When 1 On or In Alarm 1 <u>Not</u>	
Description Current Value	
Server <u>I</u> tem 🗖 <u>U</u> se Tag Name	
Type of Connection	
≤<     New     Delete     >≥     Edit Tag <u>Report Script</u> ✓     Apply     Done	

2. Click New.

- 3. In the **Name** box, type the tagname that will be used internally by SCADAlarm for the tag.
- 4. Click Apply.
- 5. Configure the properties for the alarm tag.

**Note** The tabs that appear in the **Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition** dialog box differ based on the type of server connection for the tag.

See "Configuring Tag Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 68.

See "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

See "Configuring On/Off Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 75.

See "Configuring Alarm Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 77.

See "Configuring Group Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 79.

See "Configuring Numeric Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 81.

6. To delete the selected tag, click **Delete**.

A tag cannot be deleted if it has a configured tag report script or if it is being used within another tag's script.

- 7. To add another tag, click New.
- 8. To scroll through configured tags, click the << (previous) and >> (next) buttons.
- To configure the report script for the selected tag, click Edit Tag Report Script. For more information, see Chapter 5, "Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment."
- 10. When you are finished, click Done.

# **Configuring Tag Properties for an Alarm Tag**

### To configure tag properties

1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Tag tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defined]	×
Intrusion	
193 Tag 🔂 Server S. On / Off 🏙 Alarm 🐼 Groups	
Alarm / Tag	
Name Enable Alarm	
Intrusion Value When 1	
Description <u>Not</u>	
Intrusion Alarm	
Value 1	
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm	
intrusion.ack Server Item	
But write to this tag to Acknowledge: Intrusion	
✓ <u>U</u> se Tag Name	
Type of Connection	
Get data from InTouch	
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	

- 2. In the **Name** box, type the tagname that will be used internally by SCADAlarm for the tag.
- 3. In the **Type of Connection** list, select the connection type for the tag.

For more information, see "Connection Types for Tags" on page 65.

4. In the **Description** box, type a description for the tag. This description will appear in tag lists and in the alarm acknowledgement dialog box. This description can also be included in a message format.

For more information, see "Message Formats for Alarm Reporting" on page 107.

5. In the Server Item box, type the server item name that will be associated with the SCADAlarm tag. Select the Use Tag Name check box to use the same name that you specified for the SCADAlarm tag.

**Tip** Abstracting the SCADAlarm tagname from the server item allows you to create multiple SCADAlarm tags from the same server item or use the same server item for different servers.

6. Select the check box that appears above the **Name** box to enable the functionality for the tag. The name of the check box depends on the connection type you have selected:

#### **Enable Alarm**

Only appears if you have selected a connection type of Get Data from <Server Name> or eMail Server Failure: notify <Server Name>. Select to enable alarming for this tag.

#### **Enable Function**

Only appears if you have selected a connection type of Ack All Alarms from <Server Name>, Disable SCADAlarm from <Server Name>, or Logged Caller: notify <Server Name>. Select to enable the connection type function for this tag.

#### **Enable Testing and Alarm**

Only appears if you have selected a connection type of Data Server Status with <Server Name>, Dead Phone Line: notify <Server Name>, or Bad Login Attempts: notify <Server Name>. Select to enable alarming for this tag. Also, testing will be enabled.

7. In the Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm box, type the name of the item that is to be set in the HMI when the operator acknowledges the alarm over the telephone or from the SCADAlarm alarm acknowledgement dialog box. (This option is not available if you have selected the "Disable SCADAlarm from <Server Name>" or "Logged Caller notify <Server Name>" connection type.)

For information on using this option with particular HMI systems, see Chapter 10, "Integration with HMI Applications."

For more information, see "Alarm Acknowledgements" on page 114.

# **Caution!** No control logic should be based on this tag unless you are sure about what you want to do.

8. If applicable, select the **But write to this tag to Acknowledge** check box and specify a different tag (than the acknowledge tag) that will be used to initiate the acknowledgment. For example, for Industrial Application Server, you would write to <attribute name>.AckMsg, which would automatically set the <attribute name>.Acked attribute. This box is hidden until a value is provided in the **Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm** box.  If you are configuring a tag with the "Get data from <Server Name>" connection type, in the Value When On or In Alarm box, type the string reported by the HMI system when the point becomes in alarm.

This entry is case-sensitive. Make sure that the data in this entry matches the data from the HMI system. If this box is left blank, the point is assumed to be information only, and no dial-out will occur. Typically, you would leave this option blank for analog values, which could be used in a pager format or tag report script for the telephone.

Selecting the **Not** check box will direct the SCADAlarm system to consider the tag to be in alarm when its value is not equal to the value entered in the **Value When On or In Alarm** box.

10. Click Apply.

The **Current Value** box displays the value string that the HMI system is currently reporting. When this string exactly matches the string typed in the **Value When On or In Alarm** box (if available), SCADAlarm will consider the tag to be in alarm and annunciate and/or dial out, if that functionality is enabled.

11. If you are finished configuring the tag, click Done.

### **Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag**

For more information on configuring server properties for a specific HMI, see Chapter 10, "Integration with HMI Applications."

#### To configure server properties

1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Server tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defi	ned] 🛛 🔀
Intrusion	
🕼 Tag ¼ Server 🕥 On / Off 🖏 Alarm	😰 Groups
	• - · ·
Server Name	
InTouch	New Server Delete Server
Server	
Enable Changes	D
🔽 Enable This Server	BIOMSE
On other network node:	Application
	VIEW
Server Type	TAGNAME
SuiteLink	Ackinowledgment Details
,,,,,	
_< Ne <u>w</u> Delete	>≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	Apply Done

- 2. In the Server Name list, click the name of the server to use.
- 3. To add a new server definition, perform the following:
  - Click New Server.
  - In the Server Name box, type a name for the server.
  - Click Set.
- 4. To delete the selected server, click Delete Server.

A server can be deleted only if no tags are assigned to it. Restart SCADAlarm to update tag use counts. The default server cannot be deleted; it can be renamed or disabled.

- 5. Select the **Enable Changes** check box to enable the configuration options for the server you have selected.
- 6. Select the Enable This Server check box to enable the selected server.

**Note** It is recommended that this check box is always selected.

- 7. If the server resides on another computer on the network, select the **On other network node** check box and then type the computer node name in the box.
- 8. In the **Application** and **Topic** boxes, type the parameters that are appropriate for the server. For InTouch, this is VIEW and TAGNAME, respectively.
- 9. In the **Server Type** list, select the type of protocol used by the server. DDE, SuiteLink, and Galaxy are supported. If the server is on a remote computer (node), only select DDE if the operating system on which both SCADAlarm and the server runs supports NetDDE.
- 10. Click **Acknowledgment Details** to configure data server acknowledgment parameters that are specific to this particular server. For more information, see "Configuring Data Server Acknowledgment" on page 72.
- 11. Click Apply.

SCADAlarm will prompt you to connect the current tag to the server that you just created.

12. If you are finished configuring the tag, click Done.

### **Configuring Data Server Acknowledgment**

Different HMIs need to be provided with different types of ack messages. For example:

- InTouch needs to be sent a "1" to the .ack field.
- Industrial Application Server needs to be sent a string to its ".AckMsg" attribute, which in turn indicates the alarm is acked.
- Some HMIs require a "0" as the ack bit instead of "1."

SCADAlarm allows you to specify what will be sent to the HMI for the alarm acknowledgement. You can also specify different acknowledgement options particular to your HMI. For more information, see Chapter 10, "Integration with HMI Applications."

### To specify the acknowledgement value

- 1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Server tab.
- 2. In the Server group, click Enable Changes.
3. Click Acknowledgment Details. The Data Server Acknowledgment dialog box appears.

Data Server Acknowledgment	×
Values to send to the Acknowledge tag	
For Ac <u>k</u> nowledgment	
1	
Send Ack-tag Beset (only if needed)	
To <u>R</u> eset the Acknowledge tag	
0	
Append Newline characters to these	
Process embedded variables	
Done	

- 4. In the **For Acknowledgment** box, type the value that should be sent to the HMI to acknowledge alarms.
- 5. Select the **Ack-tag Reset** check box to have SCADAlarm reset the acknowledgment tag in the HMI after any transition for the alarm state.

Some HMIs do not automatically reset the acknowledgment tag after the acknowledgment has occurred.

- 6. In the **To Reset the Acknowledge tag** box, type the value that will be used for the ack field when SCADAlarm sends the acknowledgment reset request.
- 7. Select the **Append Newline characters to these** check box if the value that is sent to the acknowledgment tag requires a "new line" character for proper acknowledgment. A new line character is the same as a "linefeed," and is equivalent to pressing Enter on the computer keyboard.

Some HMIs require that these characters are appended to the acknowledgment tag.

8. Select the **Process embedded variables** check box to have SCADAlarm insert run-time values for any variables in the acknowledgment message string that is sent to the HMI. This only applies to acknowledgment tags of type string. This functionality is same as the variables in SCADAlarm email and pager formats.

For example, the acknowledgment message string is configured as:

"Time is [T]. Acked by [O]. Value is [N:AnalogTag]. Alarm State is [A:AnalogTag]."

The actual processed message will be:

"Time is 10:33:21. Acked by ShirasR. Value is 92.1. Alarm State is Hi."

There is a special case for the D: type of variable. The special construct [D:] can be used to represent the name/description of the tag being acknowledged.

9. Click Done.

# **Configuring On/Off Properties for an Alarm Tag**

### To configure on/off properties

1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the On/Off tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are d	lefined]
Intrusion	
📴 🛯 🔤 🛃 Server ष 🖸 n / Off 👸 Alar	m 🕼 <u>G</u> roups
Alphanumeric Pager Display	
Description (from Tag tab)	Off Name On Name
Intrusion Alarm	Normal Alarm
Numeric Pager Display	
Tag ID Number	When Off When On
- Cassada Dilas	
Speech Files	Speak when On
Z_CLEAR.way	Z_ALARM.wav
Ne <u>w</u> Delete	>≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	Apply <u>D</u> one

2. In the **Alphanumeric Pager Display** area, configure the descriptions that will be displayed in an alphanumeric pager for this alarm.

These descriptions can be included as part of the alphanumeric pager/email format for the alarm. For more information, see "Message Formats for Alarm Reporting" on page 107.

#### Description

The description of the alarm.

**Note** This is the same description that appears in the **Description** box on the **Tag** tab. Changes to the description will be reflected in the **Tag** tab.

### **Off Name**

The description of the "off" (clear) state of this tag.

### On Name

The description of the "on" (alarm) state of this tag.

3. In the **Numeric Pager Display** area, configure the descriptions that will be displayed in a numeric pager for this alarm.

These descriptions can be included as part of the numeric pager/e-mail format for the alarm. For more information, see "Message Formats for Alarm Reporting" on page 107.

### **Tag ID Number**

A unique number that identifies this alarm. Since a numeric pager can only display numeric data, the alarm can be assigned a unique number (for example "123") that will let the operator receiving the page know which alarm(s) is active.

### When Off

A number that identifies the "off" (clear) state of this tag. Typically, this value is set to 0.

### When On

A number that identifies the "on" (alarm) state of this tag. Typically, this value is set to 1.

4. In the **Speech Files** area, specify the voice prompt files for each of the alarm states.

To select a voice file (.wav) or create a new file, double-click in the box or right-click in the box and click **Browse or Record New Speech File**. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears in which you can select or record a prompt. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

To select a text-to-speech (.txt) file or create a new file, right-click in the box and click **Browse or Create New Text File**. The **SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files** dialog box appears in which you can select or create a text-to-speech file. For more information, see "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

### Speak when Off

The name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken by SCADAlarm to describe the "normal" state of the tag. A spoken normal state of "CLEARED" (Z\_CLEAR.wav) is the default.

### Speak when On

The name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken by SCADAlarm to describe the "alarm" state of the tag. A spoken alarm state of "IN ALARM" (Z ALARM.wav) is the default.

- 5. Click Apply.
- 6. If you are finished configuring the tag, click **Done**.

# **Configuring Alarm Properties for an Alarm Tag**

### To configure alarm properties

1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Alarm tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 a	re defined]	
Intrusion		
📴 🔢 🔜 Server 🕅 🖸 n / Off 🔯	Alarm 🚱 Groups	
Enable	Acknowledgment	
🔽 Alarm / Function	C Ack when clear	
	C Ack when delivered	
Characteristics	Status	
Priority High 💌	Clear Test	
Delay (sec)	Unack'ed Ack	
Ne <u>w</u> De	lete >≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script	
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	Apply Done	

2. In the **Enable** area, configure whether the alarm and logging for the tag will be enabled.

### Alarm / Function

If selected, the alarm or function will be enabled for the tag.

### Logging

If selected, a line will be entered in the log each time the HMI updates the alarm tag value to SCADAlarm. Logging will only be enabled for this tag. This option may be useful if your HMI does not support logging, or if you want to track when SCADAlarm has been notified of the alarm.

**Important!** In order for any logging to occur, logging must also be enabled system wide. For more information, see "Enabling and Configuring Logging" on page 150.

3. In the **Acknowledgment** area, configure how alarms will be acknowledged for this tag.

#### Ack when clear

If selected, the alarm will acknowledge itself automatically when the alarm condition clears.

**Caution!** This feature has inherent risks. For example, if an alarm occurs, SCADAlarm may start dialing out to notify an operator of the alarm. If the alarm condition clears before dialing is completed, SCADAlarm will acknowledge the alarm (since it has cleared). The operator will receive a telephone call with no active or unacknowledged alarms present. Nuisance alarms (alarms that go in and out of alarm state) will be especially troublesome if **Ack when clear** is selected.

### Ack when delivered

If selected, the alarm notification will act as a "one-shot." This alarm will acknowledge itself after it is successfully delivered. The following events qualify as a successful delivery:

- The tag report script for the alarm is executed during a voice telephone call.
- A numeric page is delivered.
- A voice page is delivered.
- An alphanumeric page is delivered.
- An e-mail is sent.

**Caution!** This feature has inherent risks. For example, if an alarm occurs, SCADAlarm may properly deliver e-mail or a page to an operator, but if the operator has turned his/her pager off or moved out of range of the pager service, or does not check e-mail, he/she will never receive the page. SCADAlarm will still acknowledge the alarm automatically (since it has delivered the message) and no additional dialing will occur for this alarm. **This option should be used to report "status-only," non-critical events.** 

- 4. In the **Priority** list, click a priority setting for this alarm tag. Two hundred levels of alarm priority are available, from 1 (HIGH) through 200 (LOW). The priority setting determines the order in which alarms are annunciated and dialed out. For example, if a priority 1 alarm and priority 8 alarm are detected, the priority 1 alarm is dialed out first. Also, a higher priority alarm will interrupt the current processing of a lower priority alarm. For example, if SCADAlarm is waiting 15 minutes to retry a page for a priority 8 alarm, and a priority 1 alarm occurs, the priority 1 alarm notification takes precedence.
- 5. In the **Delay (sec)** box, type or select the amount of delay (in seconds) that SCADAlarm will wait after detecting an alarm before annunciating or dialing out.

For example, if the alarm delay is set to 5 seconds and this alarm is detected, SCADAlarm will not call out until 5 seconds have passed. Ensure that the **Delayed Alarms** option is enabled on the Control Schedule.

6. In the Status area, verify the alarm point:

### Test

Click to test the system using this alarm point.

Ack

Click to send an acknowledgment of this alarm point.

- 7. For more information, see "Testing an Alarm Tag" on page 84.
- 8. Click Apply.
- 9. If you are finished configuring the tag, click **Done**.

# **Configuring Group Properties for an Alarm Tag**

### To configure operator groups

- 1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Groups tab.
- 2. In the **When this alarm occurs, start calling people in this group** list, click the name of the group of operators to be called when the tag goes into alarm.
- Click Edit Group List to edit the selected operator group. The Group On-call Lists dialog box appears. For information on configuring an operator group, see Chapter 3, "Operators."

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defined]
Intrusion
📴 Iag 🚺 Server 🐧 On / Off 🖏 Alarm 🕼 Groups
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
When this alarm occurs, start calling people in this group
Security Edit Group List
□ Notify on clear/recurrence □ Notify when acknowledged
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)

4. Select the **Also notify everyone in this Group** check box to specify the name of an additional group to notify if an alarm occurs. Then, select a group from the list.

For more information, see "Alarm Notification for an "Also Notify" Operator Group" on page 80.

5. Configure when the alarm notification will be sent to the group.

#### Notify on clear/recurrence

If this check box is selected, a notification will be sent to the group when the alarm condition clears or recurs.

### Notify when acknowledged

If this check box is selected, a notification will be sent to the group when the alarm has been acknowledged.

This is for information only, and no acknowledgement is required. All operators in the **Also notify everyone in this Group** on-call group are also notified, if that check box is selected.

- 6. Click Apply.
- 7. If you are finished configuring the tag, click **Done**.

# Alarm Notification for an "Also Notify" Operator Group

SCADAlarm will notify everyone in the "also notify" group at the same time that the first person in the normal security group is notified. SCADAlarm will not require acknowledgement from operators in the "also notify" group.

The "also notify" option can be used to notify a supervisor that an alarm occurred without requiring him/her to acknowledge the alarm(s). The notification that is sent is for informational purposes only; no interaction is expected from an operator in the "also notify" group.

If the **Notify on clear/recurrence** and/or **Notify when acknowledged** check boxes are selected, these options will apply to the "also notify" group, as well. Everyone in the "also notify" group will be notified at the same time the first person in the normal operator group is notified, and will receive a noninteractive message.

**Caution!** If you create a large "also notify" group, SCADAlarm will spend a great deal of time delivering these notifications when the tag goes into alarm. Remember the available "bandwidth" for a telephone line is finite.

When an alarm occurs that has the **Also notify everyone in this Group** option enabled, SCADAlarm will call all the operators in the specified group using their first available contact method, as determined by their individual calling preferences.

If the first contact method is:	The alarm notification will be:
A voice telephone or voice pager	The tag report script for the alarm tag is executed, with no login prompt.
An alphanumeric pager	The alphanumeric pager format for the tag is sent, along with the text "Note Only."
A numeric pager	The numeric pager format for the tag is sent.
An e-mail address:	The e-mail format for the tag is sent, along with the text "Note Only."

For example, the specified operator group contains two operators, Bill and Scott. The specified "also notify" group contains two operators, Don and Mary, who are supervisors. When the alarm occurs, SCADAlarm will contact Bill and expect an alarm acknowledgement. SCADAlarm will also contact both Don and Mary at the same time Bill is called, but will not expect acknowledgement.

For more information, see "Calling Preferences for Operators" on page 55, "Interactive Voice Scripts for Alarm Reporting" on page 97, and "Message Formats for Alarm Reporting" on page 107.

# **Configuring Numeric Properties for an Alarm Tag**

Numeric properties are alarm properties that require a real or integer number, such an analog (real or integer) tag value that will trigger an alarm.

### To configure numeric properties

1. In the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Numeric tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defined]
TankLevel
1821 Tag 🛃 Server 📙 Numeric
Telephone Input Limits
High 100000.00
Format: 0.12
Low 0.00
Speech file for Engineering Units
feet way

2. In the **Telephone Input Limits** area, define the high and low limits for the **Get Numeric Value** tag report script function. When performing set-point value changes over the telephone, you can set limits on acceptable values.

For more information, see "Interactive Voice Scripts for Alarm Reporting" on page 97.

3. Use the **Decimal Places** slider to specify the decimal precision that will be spoken whenever the numeric value of this tag is spoken in a tag report script.

4. In the Speech file for Engineering Units box, specify name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken whenever the numeric value of the tag is used in a tag report script. For example, a Feet.wav file might say "feet." Whenever the value of a tag TankLevel is spoken in a tag report script, "feet" will be spoken after the numeric value. For example, "Thirteen point four six feet."

To select a voice file (.wav) or create a new file, double-click in the box or right-click in the box and click **Browse or Record New Speech File**. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears in which you can select or record a prompt. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

To select a text-to-speech (.txt) file or create a new file, right-click in the box and click **Browse or Create New Text File**. The **SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files** dialog box appears in which you can select or create a text-to-speech file. For more information, see "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

- 5. Click Apply.
- 6. If you are finished configuring the tag, click **Done**.

# **Deleting an Alarm Tag**

A tag cannot be deleted if it has a configured tag report script or if it is being used within any tag's script.

### To delete a tag

- 1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 2. In the tag list, click the alarm tag that you want to delete.

The tag list is located at the bottom of the dialog box.

Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	Apply	<u>D</u> one

3. Click Delete.

If the tag is currently being used in a script(s), a dialog box will appear listing the scripts in which the tag is used. You can modify and/or delete the corresponding tag report script(s), stop and restart SCADAlarm to update its use counts, then delete the desired tag.

4. Click Done.

83

# **Testing an Alarm Tag**

You can test an alarm tag from SCADAlarm without using data from the server.

### To test an alarm tag

- 1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 2. In the tag list, click the alarm tag that you want to test.

The tag list is located at the bottom of the dialog box.

< Ne <u>w</u>	Delete >≥	Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	•	Apply <u>D</u> one

3. Click the Alarm tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 a	re defined]	
Intrusion		
📴 Iag 🚧 Server 🖪 On / Off 🔯 Alarm 🚱 Groups		
Enable	Acknowledgment	
🔽 Alarm / Function	C Ack when clear	
	C Ack when delivered	
Characteristics	Status	
Priority High 💌	Clear Test	
Delay (sec)	Unack'ed Ack	
Ne <u>w</u> Del	lete >≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script	
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	▼ Apply <u>D</u> one	

**Note** The top button in the **Status** area will be labeled **Test** if the alarm is ready to test or **Clear** if the alarm is already active. If the button is labeled **Clear**, click the button to re-arm the alarm.

4. In the **Status** area, click **Test**. The **Send a Page or Log a Comment** window appears.

Send a Page or Log a Comment	×
🥒 Content 🔚 🔚 Send To 🛛 💬 Convert to Audio 🛛	
Comment from Bill Monroe (001) Wed 7/28/2004 11:59am	
Record this in the Log     Submit	Skip Comment
Enter your comment or page text here.	

- 5. To test the alarm and include a comment in the log, click **Submit**. Otherwise, click **Skip Comment**.
- 6. The SCADAlarm **Alarm** window appears, indicating that the new alarm has been detected.

SCADAlarm [1] Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm	) [ALARM]	
Always-on-top	Color	Acknowledge All

7. Click Acknowledge All.

# **Alarm Tag Configuration Examples**

Example alarm tag configuration for common scenarios are provided.

# Example: Annunciated/Dial-out Alarm Tag

The following is an example of an alarm tag named **Intrusion**. This is how a typical annunciated/dial-out alarm would be configured.

### To create an annunciated/dial-out alarm tag

1. In your HMI system, create a tag that you want to set up an alarm in SCADAlarm.

For example, "Intrusion."

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Data Server Status with <Server** Name>.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "Intrusion").
- 7. Select the Enable Alarm check box.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defined]
Intrusion
📴 Iag 🚮 Server 🖫 On / Off 👸 Alarm 🕼 Groups
Alarm / Tag
Intrusion United Alarm
Description
Intrusion Alarm Current
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm
intrusion.ack Server Item
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:
✓ Use Tag Name
Get data from InTouch
<u>≤</u> < <u>New</u> <u>Delete</u> >≥ <u>Edit Tag Report Script</u>
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)

- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.
- 9. Enter all required items. In order to SCADAlarm to detect when a tag is in alarm, you must enter the alarm value or string into the Value when On or In alarm field. Also, make sure the Enable alarm option is selected. Select the operator Call Group that you want to notify in case of alarm.

# Example: Analog "Information Only" Tag

The following is an example of an analog (information-only) tag named **TankLevel.** Numeric data tags are typically used in the tag report script of an alarm tag, or as part of a data acquisition tag report script.

**Note** When the tag is an analog "information only" tag, the **Speech file for Engineering Units** voice prompt file is spoken immediately after the numeric value is spoken in a tag report script (for example, feet, GPM, and so on.)

### To create an analog "information only" alarm tag

1. In your HMI system, create a tag.

For example, "TankLevel."

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Data Server Status with <Server** Name>.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "TankLevel").

7. Make sure that the **Value When On or In Alarm** box is blank. This indicates that this is an analog status-only tag.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defined	i] 🛛 🗶
TankLevel	
📴 Iag) 😹 Server 🛛 🖶 Numeric	
Alarm / Tag	
Name Enable Alarm	
TankLevel	Value When On or In Alarm
Description	<u>⊡ N</u> ot
Tank Level	Current TIE 000000
	Value (113.000000
	Server Item
	TankLevel
	☑ <u>U</u> se Tag Name
Type of Connection	
Get data from InTouch	
	>> Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
TankLevel (Tank Level)	Apply Done

8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

# Example: Discrete "Information Only" Tag

The following is an example of a discrete (information-only) tag named **P1Run.** Discrete status tags are typically used in the tag report script of an alarm tag, or as part of a data acquisition tag report script.

### To create an discrete "information only" alarm tag

1. In your HMI system, create a tag.

For example, "P1Run."

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.

- 5. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "P1Run").
- 6. Make sure that the Enable alarm check box is not selected.
- 7. In the **Value When ON or In Alarm** box, type the string reported by the HMI system when the point becomes in alarm.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [18 are defined]	<		
P1Run			
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🕅 On / Off			
Alarm / Tag			
Name Enable Alarm			
P1Bun Dip or In Alarm 1			
Description			
Pump 1 Running Status Current			
Value I <sup>0</sup>			
Convertiers			
P1Bun			
☑ Use Tag Name			
Type of Connection			
Get data from InTouch			
<< New Delete >> Edit Tag Report Script			
P1Run (Pump 1 Running Status) Apply Done			
	Ē		

- 8. In the Type of Connection list click Get data from <Server Name>.
- 9. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

# Example: Server Status Tag

Use the **Data Server Status with <Server Name>** data type to create a server "watchdog" tag. This can be used to monitor the status of the connection between a server and SCADAlarm. You could configure SCADAlarm to dialout in the event that the server fails. Define one data server status tag per server.

#### To create a "server status" tag

1. In your HMI system, create a discrete tag with read/write capability.

For example, "ServerStat". In Wonderware InTouch, you would create a "memory discrete" type tag. In Intellution, you would create a "DO" or "DR" with Output Enable capability and an Open Label of **0** and a Close Label of **1**. Configure the SCADAlarm tag with a ".A\_CV" field type.

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the Type of Connection box, click Data Server Status with <Server Name>.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "ServerStat").
- 7. Select the Enable Testing and Alarm check box.
- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

SCADAlarm will periodically toggle this status bit to the HMI. If SCADAlarm fails to toggle the bit (HMI is down), a server status alarm will be posted at SCADAlarm.

### Example: Acknowledge All Tag

Use the Ack All Alarms from <Server Name> data type to provide a means of acknowledging all alarms in SCADAlarm from the HMI system. The behavior of this tag is identical to clicking on the Acknowledge All button on the SCADAlarm Alarm popup window.

**Note** This data type is global; it is not for a particular server. However, it comes from a particular server.

#### To create an "acknowledge all" tag

1. In your HMI system, create a discrete tagname.

For example, **AckfromHMI**. For other examples, see "Example: Server Status Tag" on page 89.

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Ack All Alarms from <Server** Name>.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "AckfromHMI").

- 7. Select the Enable Function check box.
- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.
- 9. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 10. Click the Acknowledgements tab.
- 11. In the Acknowledgement Actions area, select either Accept Acknowledgements from HMI or Both.

Setting this tag to a value of 1 at the HMI will acknowledge all alarms at SCADAlarm. SCADAlarm will then immediately set the tag value back to 0. This re-arms the tag for future acknowledgements.

### Example: Disable SCADAlarm Tag

Use the **Disable SCADAlarm from <Server Name>** data type to provide a means of temporarily disabling SCADAlarm without having to shut it down.

### To create a "disable SCADAlarm" tag

1. In your HMI system, create an analog tag.

For example, "Disable\_SCADAlarm." Make sure that this tag is changeable in the HMI. In Wonderware InTouch, you would create a "memory integer" that has read/write capability. In Intellution, you would create an "AO" or "AR" with Output Enable capability.

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Disable SCADAlarm from** <**Server Name>**.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "Disable\_SCADAlarm").
- 7. Select the Enable Function check box.
- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

Setting the value of this tag to a non-zero value ("nn") in your HMI will disable SCADAlarm for "nn" minutes. For example, storing "30" in the Disable\_SCADAlarm tag will disable SCADAlarm for the next 30 minutes. When the 30 minutes expires, SCADAlarm will set the tag value back to 0. To re-enable SCADAlarm immediately, set the value of this tagname to 0.

### **Example: Dead Phone Line Tag**

Use the **Dead Phone Line: notify <Server Name>** data type to notify the HMI system when the modem cannot detect a dial tone when attempting to dial-out.

#### To create a "dead phone line" tag

1. In your HMI system, create a discrete tagname.

For example, "BadPhoneLine."

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Dead Phone Line: notify <Server** Name>.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "BadPhoneLine").
- 7. Select the Enable Testing and Alarm check box.
- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

If SCADAlarm does not detect a dial tone on five successive dial-out attempts, this alarm tag is activated. Five is the default number of dial-out attempts before posting a failure. You can adjust this value by changing the **No. of NO DIALTONE for failed-phone-line detection** parameter in the SCADALRM.INI file. After modifying this parameter, you must restart SCADAlarm for the change to take effect.

### Example: E-Mail Server Failure Tag

Use the **eMail Server Failure: notify <Server Name>** data type to create an e-mail server "watchdog" tag. This can be used to monitor the status of the connection between SCADAlarm and its configured e-mail server. You could configure SCADAlarm to dial out in the event that the server fails.

### To create an "e-mail server failure" tag

1. In your HMI system, create a discrete tag with read/write capability.

For example, "EMailStat." In Wonderware InTouch, you would create a "memory discrete" type tag. In Intellution, you would create a "DO" or "DR" with Output Enable capability and an Open Label of **0** and a Close Label of **1**. Configure the SCADAlarm tag with a ".A\_CV" field type.

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **eMail Server Failure: notify <Server Name>**.
- 5. Click **New** to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "EMailStat").
- 7. Select the Enable Testing and Alarm check box.

8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

If SCADAlarm detects that the e-mail server has failed, this alarm tag is activated.

### Example: Bad Login Attempts Tag

Use the **Bad Login Attempts: notify <Server Name>** data type to notify the HMI system and SCADAlarm if a consecutive number of unsuccessful telephone logins are detected. This may help alert you to "hacker" activity.

When an operator calls SCADAlarm, he or she will get about three tries to correctly enter an ID and PIN. If the operator fails to log in, SCADAlarm disconnects the call and the hacker-attempt count is incremented. If the log in succeeds, the hacker-attempt count is reset back to zero. By default, the hacker-attempt count must reach 10 before an alarm is generated. You can adjust the hacker-attempt limit by changing the **No. of consecutive bad logins for hacker detection** parameter in the SCADALRM.INI file. After modifying this parameter, you must restart SCADAlarm for the change to take effect.

When an unsuccessful login attempt is made, all available CPID data will be recorded as a line item in the SCADAlarm log.

### To create a "bad login attempts" tag

1. In your HMI system, create a discrete tagname.

For example, "BadLogins."

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Bad Login Attempts: notify** <**Server Name>**.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "BadLogins").
- 7. Select the Enable Testing and Alarm check box.
- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

### Example: Logged Caller Tag

Use the **Logged Caller: notify <Server Name>** data type to notify the HMI system when a caller has successfully logged into the SCADAlarm system over the telephone.

### To create a "logged caller" tag

1. In your HMI system, create a tag that supports text.

For example, "operatorname." For InTouch, use a memory message type tagname.

- 2. Start SCADAlarm.
- 3. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.
- 4. In the **Type of Connection** box, click **Logged Caller: notify <Server** Name>.
- 5. Click New to add a new tag to SCADAlarm.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type in the name of the tag that you created in the HMI system (in this example, "operatorname").
- 7. Select the Enable Function check box.
- 8. Configure all other required fields. For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

When a caller successfully logs into the SCADAlarm system over the telephone, his/her name and operator ID will be displayed in the tag in the HMI.

# Viewing and Editing Properties for Multiple Alarm Tags

You can view and edit properties for multiple tags by using the Tag-Vue editor from within SCADAlarm or by using the SCADAlarm Database Utility (DBDL.exe).

# Using the Tag-Vue Editor

The Tag-Vue editor allows you to display/modify the properties of several SCADAlarm tags simultaneously, instead of having to modify each tag individually from within the **Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition** dialog box.

### To edit tag properties using the Tag-Vue editor

1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Tag-Vue**. The **Tag-Vue** dialog box appears.

Enable 🔽 Apply Delay 0 👘 Apply All *	
Log *  Apply Select All	
Ack-on-Clear T Apply	
Ack-on-Delivery * 🗖 Apply Decimal Places * 2 🚊 Apply Done	
Alarm/Tag Name Description Value Enab Log Cir-Ack Deliv-Ack Delay Priority Dec. Pl Group Server	
badlogins Bad Logins Alarm AckClr Y n n n 0 High - Backup InTouch	
badphoneline Bad Phone Line Alarm AckClr Y n n n 0 High - Backup InTouch	
DDEStat DDE Status Flag w/In AckCir Y n n n 0 High - Backup InTouch	
Disable_SA SCADAlarm Disable tag 0 Y n n n 0 High - Backup InTouch	
Intrusion Intrusion Alarm AckAlr Y n n n 0 High - Security InTouch	
OperatorName Logged in Operator Na Clear Y n n n 0 High - Backup InTouch	
P1Run Pump 1 Running Status Normal n n · · · · · · · · InTouch	
P2Run Pump 2 Running Status Normal n n · · · · · · · InTouch	
P3Run Pump 3 Running Status Normalin n · · · · · · In Touch	
stationstatus n n · · · · · O · InTouch	
tank Intrusion Alarm Clear Y n n n 0 High - Backup InTouch	
tanik.hihistatus Intrusion.Alarm Clear Y n n n 0 High Backup InTouch	<b>•</b>

The bottom section of the dialog box lists all of the configured tags and the properties of each. The options in the top section of the dialog box can be used to change the properties of one or more tags.

- 2. To sort tags based upon a particular attribute, click the column header in the bottom section of the dialog box.
- 3. Select the tag(s) to modify in the list. Hold down the **Ctrl** key on your keyboard to select multiple tags. Click **Select All** to select all of the tags in the list.
- 4. For each property you want to change, configure the new value and then click **Apply**. To apply the values for all of the properties, click **Apply All**. Configurable properties are:

#### Enable

If you select this check box, the alarm or function will be enabled for the tag.

#### Log

If you select this check box, a line will be entered in the log each time the HMI updates the alarm tag value to SCADAlarm. Logging will only be enabled for this tag. This option may be useful if your HMI does not support logging, or if you want to track when SCADAlarm has been notified of the alarm.

#### Ack-on-Clear

If you select this check box, the alarm will acknowledge itself automatically when the alarm condition clears.

#### **Ack-on-Delivery**

If you select this check box, alarm notification will act as a "one-shot." This alarm will acknowledge itself after it is successfully delivered.

### Delay

The amount of delay (in seconds) that SCADAlarm will wait after detecting an alarm before annunciating or dialing out.

### Priority

The priority setting for this alarm tag. Two hundred levels of alarm priority are available, from 1 (HIGH) through 200 (LOW). The priority setting determines the order in which alarms are annunciated and dialed out. For example, if a priority 1 alarm and priority 8 alarm are detected, the priority 1 alarm is dialed out first. Also, a higher priority alarm will interrupt the current processing of a lower priority alarm. For example, if SCADAlarm is waiting 15 minutes to retry a page for a priority 8 alarm, and a priority 1 alarm occurs, the priority 1 alarm notification takes precedence.

### **Decimal Places**

The decimal precision that will be spoken whenever the numeric value of this tag is spoken in a tag report script.

5. To edit the definition, tag report script, or on-call group for a tag, rightclick the row that contains the tag and click one of the following:

Option	Dialog Box Accessed	
Edit Tag or Server	Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box	
Edit Tag Report Script	<b>Tag Report Script Construction</b> dialog box	
Edit Group	Group On-call Lists dialog box	

6. Click Done.

### Using the SCADAlarm Database Utility

The SCADAlarm Database Utility (DBDL.exe) allows you to export the SCADAlarm tag database to a .csv file. You can edit the .csv file using a program such as Microsoft Excel and then import the changes back into SCADAlarm.

For more information on using this utility, see the SCADAlarm Database Utility documentation.

### CHAPTER 5

# Alarm Reporting and Acknowledgment

After adding tags to your SCADAlarm system, you should create a tag report script for each tag that requires one. Tag report scripts are typically used for:

- Tags that require annunciation and/or dial-out notification (that is, alarms)
- Tags that have values you want to modify over the telephone (that is, setpoints)

Some tags don't require their own tag report script, but instead are used in scripts for other tags. For example, a tank level analog value tag may be included as part of a HI level alarm tag report script.

Without a tag report script, SCADAlarm will speak, in the configured text-tospeech voice, a default message that includes the tagname and alarm state.

### Contents

- Interactive Voice Scripts for Alarm Reporting
- Message Formats for Alarm Reporting
- Alarm Acknowledgements

# Interactive Voice Scripts for Alarm Reporting

A tag report script defines how tag information is reported to an operator. A script is associated with a tag, so any time the tag needs to be reported, the script is executed.

**Note** Not all tags require a pager format or tag report script; some tags are created solely for inclusion in the scripts and/or formats of other tags.

# **Creating an Interactive Voice Report Script**

### To create a voice report script

1. On the Maintenance menu, select Tag Report Scripts. The Tag Report Script Construction dialog box appears.

- Tag Report Script Construction - 🗆 × badlogins (Bad Logins Alarm) -Delete Done badlogins (Bad Logins Alarm) fail badphoneline (Bad Phone Line Alarm) DDEStat (DDE Status Flag w/ Intouch) Disable\_SA (SCADAlarm Disable tag) EMailServerFail (SCADAlarm E-Mail server failure) Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm) • Prompt OperatorName (Logged in Operator Name) P1Run (Pump 1 Running Status) P2Run (Pump 2 Running Status) av P3Run (Pump 3 Running Status) stationstatus tank (Intrusion Alarm) Remove tank.hihistatus (Intrusion Alarm) TankLevel (Tank Level) tanklevel.hilimit (Tank Level HI Setpoint) TankLevel.histatus (Tank HI Level Alarm) tanklevel.lolimit (Tank Level LO Setpoint) TankLevel.LoStatus (Tank LO Level Alarm) Play tank (Intrusion Alarm) •
- 2. Click the Interactive Voice Report Script tab.

3. In the list at the top of the dialog box, click the alarm tag for which you want to configure the report script.

**Note** Tags that have existing tag report scripts configured for them are shown in a bold font.

You will be prompted to create a new script for this alarm tag.

Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)  Delete			
D Interactive Voice Report Script Beger, Text-to-speech, and eMail			
Item Detail     Play Voice Prompt     Play this file:     Insert     Remove     Utilities     Play     Copy to:     Tank (Intrusion Alarm)			

4. Click **OK**. The dialog box will be cleared.

5. In the **Item Detail** area, select a script function from the list. Available functions are:

### **Play Voice Prompt**

Plays a voice prompt (.wav) file for the caller. During configuration, you are prompted to select or record a voice prompt file.

For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

#### **Speak Numeric Value**

Speaks the numeric value of the selected tag. During configuration, you will select the tag whose value is to be spoken.

### Speak Alarm State

Speaks either the "Speak when Off" or "Speak when On" prompt for the selected tag. During configuration, you will select the tag whose state is to be spoken.

For more information, see "Configuring On/Off Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 75.

#### **Get Numeric Value**

Prompts the caller to enter the new value (using the DTMF "\*" key as a decimal point, and the DTMF "#" key to terminate entry), and then repeats the entered value to the caller for confirmation before sending a request to the HMI to change it. During configuration, you will select the tag whose value is to be changed.

This also can be used to turn a discrete tag "on" or "off" by entering a "1" or "0" followed by the pound sign (#).

#### Acknowledge

If the alarm has already been acknowledged, this function speaks "Alarm has been acknowledged." If not, this function speaks "To Acknowledge, press nine. To continue without acknowledging, press six." and then accepts an appropriate keystroke. During configuration, you will select the tag to be acknowledged.

**Note** The Play Voice Prompt, Speak Numeric Value, and Speak Alarm State scripts also operate during local annunciation.

6. If you are configuring a **Play Voice Prompt** type script, in the **Play this file** box that appears, select an existing voice prompt file (.wav or .txt) or the name of a new voice prompt file to play.

To select a voice file (.wav) or create a new file, double-click in the box or right-click in the box and click **Browse or Record New Speech File**. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears in which you can select or record a prompt. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

To select a text-to-speech (.txt) file or create a new file, right-click in the box and click **Browse or Create New Text File**. The **SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files** dialog box appears in which you can select or create a text-to-speech file. For more information, see "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

- 7. If you are configuring any other script type, specify the tag in the **of this** tag box that appears.
- 8. Click Insert to insert the configured entry into the script window.

9. Repeat steps 6 through 9 to add additional functions to the script. For example:

Tag Report Script Co	onstruction	
Intrusion (Intrusio	n Alarm)	▼ Dele <u>t</u> e <u>D</u> one
" 🥬 Interactive ⊻oice Rep	oort Script 🖃 Pager, Te <u>x</u> t-ti	o-speech, and eMail
Play Voice Prompt Speak Alarm State Acknowledge	intrus.way Intrusion Intrusion Ala Intrusion Intrusion Ala	Item Detail
-		Acknowledge
		this tag:
		Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)
		Insert Remove
		Utilities
		Play
		Copy to: tank (Intrusion Alarm)
These actions will be executed when the caller hears about this alarm		

- 10. Click **Play** to hear the tag report script. If the modem hardware is busy, the script will not be played.
- 11. To copy this tag's script to the script for another tag, select the target tag from the list and then click **Copy to:**.

When scripts are copied, tagnames are replaced where applicable, but voice prompt files must be manually changed, if desired.

When the alarm is true, this tag report script will execute, performing each of the functions in the order that they appear in the **Tag Report Script Construction** dialog box.

# **Report Script Examples**

Report scripts for some common scenarios are provided.

### Example 1: Simple Alarm Script

**Note** If no script is configured, SCADAlarm will use text-to-speech to construct a temporary script similar to this example.

In the following example, a tag report script is created for tag named Intrusion. The tag report script annunciates the alarm and gives the operator an opportunity to acknowledge the alarm. The tag report script might say:

"The status of the Intrusion Alarm is: IN ALARM. To acknowledge press 9, to continue without acknowledging press 6."

The script consists of three script functions:

- A voice prompt that says "The status of the intrusion alarm is"
- The alarm state of the tag, either "IN ALARM" or "CLEARED."
- An acknowledge function for the tag. This is a pre-configured tag report script function. Only the tagname needs to be supplied.

When alarm Intrusion is true, this tag report script will execute, performing each of the functions in the order that they appear in the **Tag Report Script Construction** dialog box.

Tag Report Script Construction		
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	▼ Dele <u>t</u> e <u>D</u> one	
Dinteractive Voice Report Script E Pager, Text-t	o-speech, and eMail	
Play Voice Prompt Speak Alarm State Acknowledge Intrusion Intrusion Ala	Item Detail	
	Acknowledge	
	this tag:	
	Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)	
	Insert Remove	
	Utilities	
	Play	
	Copy to: tank (Intrusion Alarm)	
These actions will be executed when the caller hears about this alarm		

Function	Parameter	What it sounds like
Play Voice Prompt	Intrus.wav	"The status of the intrusion alarm is"
Speak Alarm State	Intrusion	"In ALARM"
Acknowledge	Intrusion	"To acknowledge, press 9. To continue without acknowledging, press 6."

### Example 2: Discrete Alarm Script

For this example, the level in a tank (in feet) exists at the HMI as tag **TankLevel** and the high alarm is represented by **TankLevel.histatus**. Here's an example of what the tag report script might say: "The tank high level alarm is: in alarm. The tank level in feet is: twenty-five point seven. To acknowledge, press nine. To continue without acknowledging, press six."

TankLevel.histatus (Tank HI Level Alarm) 💌 Delete Done		
💯 Interactive Voice Report Script 📄 🖃 Pager, Te <u>x</u> t-to-speech, and eMail		
Play Voice Prompt       hialarm.wav         Speak Alarm State       TankLevel.histatus T         Play Voice Prompt       TankLevel Tank Leve         Speak Numeric Value       TankLevel Tank Leve         Acknowledge       TankLevel.histatus T         Play Uoice Prompt       Play Voice Prompt         Image: Speak Numeric Value       TankLevel Tank Leve         Acknowledge       TankLevel.histatus T         Image: Voice Prompt       Play Ubice Prompt         Image: Voice Prompt       Image: Voice Prompt		

Function	Parameter	What it sounds like
Play Voice Prompt	hialarm.wav	"The tank high level alarm is"
Speak Alarm State	TankLevel.histatus	"In ALARM"
Play Voice Prompt	tanklvl.wav	"The tank level in feet is"
Speak Numeric Value	TankLevel	"Twenty-five point seven"
Acknowledge	TankLevel.histatus	"To acknowledge, press 9. To continue without acknowledging, press 6."

**Note** The **Acknowledge** function is a pre-configured tag report script function. Just follow the instructions over the telephone to acknowledge the alarm.

### **Example 3: Data Acquisition Script**

In this example, several process values for a pump station are spoken in a single tag report script. The level in a tank (in feet) exists at the HMI as tag **TankLevel** and the pump run status bits are represented by **P1Run**, **P2Run**, and **P3Run**. This script could be configured to sound like this:

"The tank level in feet is: twenty-three point four. Pump one is: Running. Pump two is: Running. Pump three is: Stopped."

🍋 Tag Report Script Cor	nstruction	<u>-0×</u>
stationstatus		Done
💯 Interactive Voice Repo	rt Script 🖃 Pager, Te <u>x</u> t-ti	p-speech, and eMail
Play Voice Prompt Speak Numeric Value Play Voice Prompt Speak Alarm State Play Voice Prompt Speak Alarm State Play Voice Prompt Speak Alarm State -	tanklvi.wav TankLevel Tank Levi p1.wav P1Run Pump 1 Runni p2.wav P2Run Pump 2 Runni p3.wav P3Run Pump 3 Runni	Item Detail   Play Voice Prompt   Play this file:   IanklvI.wav     Insert   Remove   Utilities   Play   Copy to:   Iank (Intrusion Alarm)
		li

Function	Parameter	What it sounds like
Play Voice Prompt	tanklvl.wav	"The tank level in feet is"
Speak Numeric Value	TankLevel	"Twenty-three point four"
Play Voice Prompt	p1.wav	"Pump one is"
Speak Alarm State	P1Run	"Running"
Play Voice Prompt	p2.wav	"Pump two is."
Speak Alarm State	P2Run	"Running"

Function	Parameter	What it sounds like
Play Voice Prompt	p3.wav	"Pump three is"
Speak Alarm State	P3Run	"Stopped"

### Example 4: Set-Point Change Script

For this example, a high level alarm set-point for a tank (in feet) exists at the HMI as tag **TankLevel.hilimit**. This type of interactive remote data entry uses SCADAlarm's **Get Numeric Value** function to retrieve new values over the telephone. A script for a set-point change might say:

"The current set-point value is: thirty-four point seven. Enter a new value. For the decimal point, press the star key. To terminate your entry, press the pound key. To cancel this function, press the pound key only."

Tag Report Script Construction					
tanklevel.hilimit (Tank Level HI Setpoint)   Delete Done					
P Interactive ⊻oice Report Script Pager, Text-to-speech, and eMail					
Play Voice Prompt hisetpt.wav Speak Numeric Value tanklevel.hilimit Tank Get Numeric Value tanklevel.hilimit Tank	Item Detail          Play Voice Prompt         Play this file:         hisetpt.wav         Insert       Remove				
	Play				
	Copy to: tank (Intrusion Alarm)				

Function	Parameter	What it sounds like
Play Voice Prompt	hisetpt.wav	"The current set-point value is"

Function	Parameter	What it sounds like
Speak Numeric Value	TankLevel	"Thirty-four point seven"
Get Numeric Value	TankLevel	"Enter a new value. For the decimal point, press the star key. To terminate your entry, press the pound key. To cancel this function, press the pound key only."

**Note** The **Get Numeric Value** is a pre-configured tag report script function. Just follow the instructions over the telephone to enter the new value and confirm that the new value was sent to the system successfully.

# **Message Formats for Alarm Reporting**

A message format defines:

- The text or numeric message that will appear for a pager or e-mail message.
- The text that will be spoken for a "text-to-speech" message over the phone.

Thus, there are four types of formats:

- Alphanumeric
- Numeric-only
- Text-to-speech
- E-mail

Formats may contain static text and/or variables, whose values are updated when the page or e-mail is sent or when the phone message is spoken.

For alphanumeric paging, text-to-speech, and e-mail formats, the full character set is available, allowing you to describe alarms in detail. Numeric-only paging requires some creativity in describing what alarm has occurred, since only numbers and hyphens are available, and the message length is very short (typically 20 digits).

Message formats contain plain text mixed with embedded variable references. Variables are identified by text enclosed in square brackets (for example, [S]). Some variables are defined in the Alphanumeric Pager Display boxes when defining the alarm tag. For example, the tag description and alarm on name, and so on.

If a tag already has a configured interactive voice report script but no pager format, the format is automatically generated from the voice script; otherwise a default pager format is created. Therefore, if you are planning to use voice scripts and pager/e-mail messages in your SCADAlarm system, it is recommended that you create the voice scripts first, and then the pager/e-mail formats. For more information, see "Interactive Voice Scripts for Alarm Reporting" on page 97. If there is no interactive voice script, you can convert the alphanumeric pager format to text-to-speech for local or phone annunciation by clicking the **Autogenerate** button.

# **Creating a Message Format**

### To create a message format

- 1. On the Maintenance menu, click Tag Report Scripts. The Tag Report Script Construction dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the Pager, Text-to-speech, and eMail tab.

🦆 Tag Report Script Construction					
Tag1		▼ Dele <u>t</u> e <u>D</u> one			
Interactive ⊻oice Report Script  Pager, Text-to-speech, and eMail					
Message Formats       Autogenerate         This page will contain approximately 15 characters. The maximum for alphanumeric pagers is set to 80.       Autogenerate         Image: Alphanumeric information of the maximum for alphanumeric pagers is set to 80.       Image: Alphanumeric information of the maximum for alphanumeric pagers is set to 80.					
Insert Data For This Tag		Insert Other Data			
Tag1	<b></b>	System <u>T</u> ime			
Alarm/Tag Nam <u>e</u>	Description / Number	SCADAlarm Phone Number			
<u>N</u> umeric Value	<u>R</u> aw Value	Paged <u>O</u> per. Name / ID			
Alarm State	Ac <u>k</u> , State	# of Unack'ed Alarms			
		V			
Preview					

3. In the list at the top of the dialog box, click the alarm tag for which you want to configure the message format.

When you first create a message format for a tag, the default format will appear in the window at the bottom of the dialog box. If no tag report script was built for the tag, a default message format is generated.

108
4. In the **Message Formats** area, click the type of message format to configure, either **Alphanumeric**, **Numeric-only**, **Text-to-speech**, or **eMail**.

Text will appear that describes the length of the current message and the maximum number of characters allowed for the format type. If the maximum is exceeded, SCADAlarm will truncate the message and log the fact that it did so.

For more information on defining the maximum length, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32. These values should be set to the maximum characters allowed by your paging service provider.

- 5. Click **Autogenerate** if you want SCADAlarm to automatically build the message format from an existing tag report script. If the message format already includes text and/or variables, you cannot autogenerate unless you delete the existing text and/or variables. Skip to step 9.
- 6. In the Insert Data For This Tag list, select the tag from the list.
- 7. Configure the format in the window at the bottom of the dialog box. Use the buttons in the **Insert Data For This Tag** and **Insert Other Data** areas to insert variables at the current edit cursor location.

The appropriate buttons will be available for the type of format you are creating. For example, the **Paged Oper. Name / ID** button is not available if you have selected to create a numeric-only format.

To include a single bracket character ([), type two brackets ([[).

#### Alarm/Tag Name

The name of the tag.

#### **Description / Number**

The tag description and/or number. Inserts the variable: [D:tagname]

#### **Numeric Value**

The numeric value for the tag. Inserts the variable: [N:tagname]

#### **Raw Value**

The raw value for the tag. This is used to display or speak string data. Inserts the variable: [R:tagname]

#### **Alarm State**

The alarm state for the tag. This is determined by the Off Name or On Name setting for the tag's definition. Inserts the variable: [A:tagname]

### Ack. State

The acknowledgment state for the tag. This will be either "Acked" or "UNACK." Inserts the variable: [K:tagname]

#### System Time

The system time. Inserts the variable: [T]

#### SCADAlarm Phone Number The SCADAlarm telephone number. Inserts the variable: [S]

Paged Oper. Name / ID

The name of the operator that is contacted. Inserts the variable: [O]

#### # of Unack'ed Alarms

The number of unacknowledged alarms. Inserts the variable: [#]

- 8. If you want to start over and have SCADAlarm re-generate a format, delete the entire contents of the message window and then click **Autogenerate**.
- 9. In the **Preview** area, verify how the message will appear or be spoken. For a text-to-speech format, you can double-click in the area and listen to the message.
- 10. Click Done.

### **Message Format Examples**

Examples are provided for each of the message format types.

### Example 1: Alphanumeric Message Format

In the following example, the operator name ([O]), SCADAlarm telephone number ([S]), tag description ([D]), current alarm state ([A:]), and current acknowledge state ([K:]) of the tag are included in the message format.

Tag Report Script Construction			×
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)   Delete Done			
${\cal P}$ Interactive <u>V</u> oice Report S	icript 🖃 Pager, Te <u>x</u> t-to-sp	peech, and eMail	
Message Formats       This page will contain approximately 49 characters. The maximum for alphanumeric pagers is set to 80.       Autogenerate            • Alphanumeric O Numeric-only O Text-to-speech O eMail           • Mail			
Insert Data For This Tag		Insert Other Data	
Intrusion (Intrusion	Alarm) 🔹	System <u>T</u> ime	
Alarm/Tag Nam <u>e</u>	Description / Number	SCADAlarm Phone Number	
<u>N</u> umeric Value	<u>R</u> aw Value	Paged <u>O</u> per. Name / ID	
<u>A</u> larm State	Ac <u>k</u> , State	# of Unack'ed Alarms	
[0] [S] [D:Intrusion] [A:Intrusion]         Preview         Bill Monroe 555-1212 Intrusion Alarm Normal UNACK			T T
Enter your own wording here, or adjust the current wording.			

**Note** If the message format already includes text and/or variables, you cannot autogenerate unless you delete the existing text and/or variables.

### Example 2: Numeric-only Message Format

Numeric-only pager formats require a bit of imagination in their construction. You may want to design a coding system that identifies the alarm for the page recipient. For example, tag Intrusion might be represented by "001" on the pager, and its state (alarm or clear) by a number (1 or 0, respectively). This data is entered in the numeric pager display area of the tag's definition.

In the following example, the SCADAlarm telephone number ([S]) and the number and alarm state ([A:]) of one tag is to be included in the pager message. The operator is reminded that he/she will need to call 222-2222 in order to acknowledge this alarm, which alarm occurred (number 001), and the fact that the alarm is now clear (0).

**Note** For most numeric pager systems, the DTMF star (\*) character is displayed on a numeric pager as a dash (-).

🎦 Tag Report Script Construction			
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)   Delete Done			
	Script 🖃 Pager, Te <u>x</u> t-to-spe	ech, and eMail	
Message Formats         This page will contain approximately 15 digits. The maximum for numeric pagers is set to 30.         Alphanumeric         Numeric-only         Text-to-speech         Mail			
Insert Data For This Tag			
Intrusion (Intrusion	Alarm) 🔹	System <u>T</u> ime	
Alarm/Tag Nam <u>e</u>	Description / Number	SCADAlarm Phone Number	
<u>N</u> umeric Value	<u>B</u> aw Value	Paged Oper. Name / ID	
<u>A</u> larm State	Ac <u>k</u> , State	# of Unack'ed Alarms	
Preview 222-222-001-0#		Ă	

**Note** If the message format already includes text and/or variables, you cannot autogenerate unless you delete the existing text and/or variables.

### Example 3: Text-to-Speech Message Format

In the following example, a text message is configured that greets the operator by name ([O]) and then describes the alarm state ([A:]).

This message can be spoken to the operator over a phone or voice pager.

Tag Report Script Construction			<u>- 🗆 ×</u>		
P1Run (Pump 1 Running Status)  Delete				<u>D</u> one	
💯 Interactive <u>V</u> oice Report S	cript 🖃 Pager, Te <u>x</u> t-to-sp	eech,	, and eMail		
Message Formats       Text-to-speech format can be up to 1024 characters long; this has 45.       Autogenerate         O Alphanumeric       Numeric-only       Text-to-speech       eMail				ate	
Insert Data For This Tag			nsert Other Da	ta	
P1Run (Pump 1 Ru	nning Status) 🛛 💌		Sy	vstem <u>T</u> ime	
Alarm/Tag Nam <u>e</u>	Description / Number		<u>S</u> CADAla	rm Phone Numbe	er
<u>N</u> umeric Value	<u>R</u> aw Value		Paged (	<u>D</u> per, Name / ID	
Alarm State	Ac <u>k</u> , State		<u>#</u> of U	nack'ed Alarms	
Hello [U]. The status of Pump 1 is [A:P1Run].				×.	
Preview (click here to test) Hello Bill Monroe. The status of Pump 1 is Normal.			4		
Enter your own wording here, o	r adjust the current wording.				//.

**Note** If the message format already includes text and/or variables, you cannot autogenerate unless you delete the existing text and/or variables.

### **Example 4: E-Mail Message Format**

You can set up an e-mail format to describe each alarm in the e-mail. If you do not, a default format will be used. This format is interpreted exactly the same as the alphanumeric pager format would be, except it can be longer and can contain newline characters and multiple consecutive spaces (which are compressed to a single space in a pager format). **Note** The included Database Utility reads and writes .csv format files, and the .csv format does not support newlines. Using newlines in a format will cause newlines to be inserted into the .csv file, which starts a new CSV record, rather than remaining as part of the same record. Therefore, if you plan to include newlines in your e-mail format, do not use the Database Utility to manage scripts.

In the following example, a text message is included that describes the alarm state ([A:]).

Tag Report Script Construction			
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)  Delete Done			
Interactive ⊻oice Report Script ≅ Pager, Text-to-speech, and eMail			
Message Formats eMail format can be up to 1024 characters long; this has 49.			
Insert Data For This Tag			
Intrusion (Intrusion	Alarm) 🔹	System <u>T</u> ime	
Alarm/Tag Nam <u>e</u>	Description / Number	SCADAlarm Phone Number	
<u>N</u> umeric Value	<u>R</u> aw Value	Paged Oper. Name / ID	
<u>A</u> larm State	Ac <u>k</u> . State	# of Unack'ed Alarms	
The Course Decay Interview Alexen in Maletaneire 1			
Preview The Server Room Intrusion Alarm is Normal.			
Enter your own wording here, or adjust the current wording.			

**Note** If the message format already includes text and/or variables, you cannot autogenerate unless you delete the existing text and/or variables.

### Alarm Acknowledgements

When an alarm occurs, SCADAlarm will locally annunciate and/or dial-out based upon which features are enabled when the alarm occurs. **In order for SCADAlarm to consider its job complete, all alarms must be acknowledged**. As long as unacknowledged alarms exist, SCADAlarm will continue to annunciate and/or dial-out.

There are three ways to acknowledge alarms in SCADAlarm:

- In the SCADAlarm software application, click the **Acknowledge All** in the **Alarm** window that appears when an alarm is triggered.
- Acknowledge the alarms over the telephone, via a menu tree function.
- Set the acknowledge tag for the alarm to a value of 1 in the HMI software. (This requires some simple control logic at the HMI). This method works only if a valid acknowledge tag is defined for the alarm tag and if the **Accept Acknowledgements from HMI** or **Both** option is selected in the **Acknowledgements** tab of the **System Parameters** dialog box.

**Note** Acknowledging the alarm only at the HMI doesn't acknowledge the alarm in SCADAlarm unless the **Acknowledge Tag** is properly configured. The **Acknowledge Tag** is provided as a convenience (strictly optional), which may allow you to acknowledge alarms from a single location.

Conversely, the **Acknowledge Tag** option within SCADAlarm allows you to acknowledge the HMI software at the same time you are acknowledging SCADAlarm. This method works only if a valid acknowledge tag is defined for the alarm tag and if the **Send Acknowledgements to HMI** or **Both** option is selected in the **Acknowledgements** tab of the **System Parameters** dialog box.

The SCADAlarm alarm is considered acked even if the acknowledgment sent to the HMI fails.

For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.

### Acknowledging Alarms

The **SCADAlarm** dialog box appears when alarm(s) are detected. The tagname, description, and the current state of the alarm(s) are displayed in the top part of the dialog box.



### To acknowledge alarms

1. Acknowledge either one or more single alarms or all alarms:

To acknowledge all alarms in the window, click Acknowledge All.

To acknowledge a specific alarm (or alarms), select the desired alarm(s) in the list and click **Acknowledge**.

No further local annunciation or dial-out will occur until a **new** alarm is detected. In addition, the SCADAlarm acknowledge tag(s) for each of the alarm(s) (if configured) will be set to 1. This will also acknowledge alarms at the HMI if the **Send Acknowledgements to HMI** or **Both** option is selected in the **Acknowledgements** tab of the **System Parameters** dialog box.

For more information, see "Configuring System Parameters" on page 148.

- 2. Select the **Always-on-top** check box if you want the SCADAlarm dialog box to always appear in front of all software applications currently open on the computer
- 3. Select the **Color** check box to display the alarm text in color.

You can configure SCADAlarm to not show this alarm window. To disable this window, select the **Never show it** option in the **System Parameters** dialog box, **Acknowledgements** tab.

### **HMI Software and Remote Acknowledgement**

Not all HMI software packages support remote acknowledgement. To determine if support exists for remote acknowledgement, see the documentation for your HMI software.

For information on how to set up remote acknowledgement for various HMI software packages, see Chapter 10, "Integration with HMI Applications."

# Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters

To configure alarm acknowledgement parameters

1. On the Configuration menu, click System Parameters.

2. Click the Acknowledgements tab.



3. In the **Acknowledgement Action** area, configure how alarm acknowledgements will interact with the Server (HMI). All options require a properly-defined acknowledge tag definition for the desired alarm(s).

#### Accept Acknowledgements from HMI

If selected, you will be able to acknowledge alarms in SCADAlarm from the HMI.

#### Send Acknowledgements to HMI

If selected, you will be able to acknowledge alarms at the HMI from SCADAlarm.

#### Both

If selected, alarms can be acknowledged from both the HMI and SCADAlarm.

4. In the Acknowledgement Window area, configure the behavior of the SCADAlarm alarm dialog box.

#### Keep window Always On Top

If selected, the alarm window will always be displayed on top of other software application windows.

#### Never show it

If selected, the alarm window will never be displayed, even if there are alarms.

5. Close the dialog box.

### **Documenting an Alarm Test**

The **Operator Comment** dialog box appears when testing an alarm tag from the **Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition** dialog box, allowing you to document the alarm test. The log file always notes the date and time of the alarm test; the operator comment is optional.

118	Chapter 5
-----	-----------

### CHAPTER 6

## Handling Incoming Voice Calls

You will need to configure how SCADAlarm will handle incoming voice calls. This includes selecting the device used for incoming calls, configuring operator authentication, and setting up a telephone menu tree that users will hear when they call in.

### Contents

- Devices for Incoming Voice Calls
- Security for Incoming Calls
- Telephone Menu Trees
- Configuring the Delayed-Answer Ring Count

### **Devices for Incoming Voice Calls**

You can configure the device to use for incoming calls. For more information, see "Hardware Devices" on page 144.

### Security for Incoming Calls

When an operator calls the SCADAlarm phone number, he/she must first login to the system. Login requirements are handled on a per-user basis, and can be configured as part of the operator profile. For more information, see "Operator Profiles" on page 47.

SCADAlarm can detect failed logins and then set an alarm. The number of failed logins to detect can be configured using the **No. of consecutive bad logins for hacker detection** entry in the **[System Parameters]** section of the SCADALRM.ini file. By default, this entry is set to 10.

Both the operator ID code and PIN are checked. Then if the number of failed logins exceeds the configured setting, the time of the call, CPID information, and the operator ID code are written to the SCADAlarm log file. The PIN used by the hacker is not logged.

To generate an alarm for hacker detection, set up a Bad Login Attempts alarm tag.

### **Telephone Menu Trees**

The menu tree defines the options available to an operator when he/she is logged in on the telephone. The menu tree functions just like a typical voice mail menu for a telephone. Each menu is limited to 11 DTMF keys. (DTMF key 0 is reserved for hanging up the telephone or returning to the main, or "top," menu.)

After logging in over the telephone, an operator starts in the top menu and SCADAlarm determines whether or not the operator has administrative access. If so, the Administrator Menu Prompt File for the top menu is spoken. Otherwise, the Non-administrator Menu Prompt File is spoken. The menu prompt file should accurately describe the key options that are available to the operator.

The top menu is just like any other menu, with two exceptions. First, it cannot be deleted. Second, the DTMF 0 key terminates the call, whereas in submenus, the DTMF 0 key returns to the top menu.

The **Menu Tree Construction** dialog box is used to set-up the menu structure the users will navigate on the phone. The telephone keys, their functions, what the functions act on, and the permission level for each key are displayed. In the example below, when the operator presses the "1" key on his/her telephone, the "Report Active Alarms" function will be executed. When an administrator presses the "5" key on the telephone, he or she will go to the Control submenu; a non-administrator will just hear the menu again.



If any **DTMF** keys are set up for administrator-only access, you will need to record separate administrator and non-administrator prompt files. The menu prompt files are used to speak a list of active keys for the current menu, so the caller knows which options are available and configured.

For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136 and "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

In many cases, no submenus are needed. In fact, the majority of SCADAlarm systems only require four basic functions:

- Report active alarms
- Report unacknowledged alarms
- Acknowledge all alarms
- Hang up the telephone

More menu functions may be required if, for example, areas of a plant must be segregated and reported in detail, or there is a set of functions that require administrator-only access, such as set-point changes. In these cases, submenus work well. The fact that menus can lead to other menus makes a diagram of this type of structure resemble a tree, with the top menu at the root.

If submenus are required, the top menu should lead to other, logically grouped submenus, perhaps by plant area or general function. The Unacknowledged Alarm list should also be in the top menu, allowing the caller to determine which direction to proceed without having to do too much navigation.

Using the "group" menu commands (**Report Active Group** alarms, **Report Unack'ed Group** alarms, **Acknowledge Group** alarms) allows you to configure your menu tree to report and acknowledge a specific group of alarms, instead of having to listen to the entire list of alarms.

For more information, see "Adding a Tag to the SCADAlarm Database" on page 66.

### **Constructing a Telephone Menu Tree**

### To construct a menu tree

1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Menu Tree**. The **Menu Tree Construction** dialog box appears.

Menu Tree Construction	×
Top Menu  Report Active Alarms  Acknowledge All Alarms  Hangup	Current Menu and Key Menu "Top Menu" Key 1 Show Unused Keys Phone (DTMF) Key Setup Report Active Alarms Administrator Administrator-only Spoken Menu Files Administrator Z_TOP1.wav Non-administrator Z_TOP1.wav Done

The main window displays the menu tree with the four default menu items in the top menu. Each default menu item is assigned to a menu key. 2. Select the **Show Unused Keys** check box to view all available menu keys. Additional keys available for use will appear in the menu tree window.



3. In the menu tree window, select the key to configure.

If you are adding a new key, click on an (available for use) entry.

To set a menu key back to being available for use, perform any of the following:

- Right-click on the key and click Set to "(available for use)".
- In the Phone (DTMF) Key Setup list, click (available for use).
- 4. In the **Phone (DTMF) Key Setup** list, click the function that will be associated with the selected key.

Some functions require additional configuration. For example, if you select the **Acknowledge Group** function, a list will appear in which you can select the group name. For a list of functions and configure options, see "Available Functions for a Menu Tree" on page 124.

5. Select the **Administrator-only** check box to make the selected function only available to callers with administrative privileges.

You may want to limit certain menu functions (for example, set-point changes, acknowledgement of all alarms, and so on) only to operators with administrator privileges. If an operator with no administrator privileges attempts to access an administrator-only function, the spoken menu file will be repeated.

- 6. Click **Set** to update the menu tree window with the new or updated key entry.
- 7. Repeat steps 3 through 6 to complete the menu tree.

8. Select each menu (the top menu plus any submenus that you have created) and specify in the **Spoken Menu Files** area the menu prompts that will be heard by callers.

If you are incorporating administrator-only menu functions in the menu tree, you should record two separate menu prompt files: one for administrators and one for non-administrators that describe only the functions available to each.

To select a voice file (.wav) or create a new file, double-click in the box or right-click in the box and click **Browse or Record New Speech File**. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears in which you can select or record a prompt. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

To select a text-to-speech (.txt) file or create a new file, right-click in the box and click **Browse or Create New Text File**. The **SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files** dialog box appears in which you can select or create a text-to-speech file. For more information, see "Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File" on page 138.

- 9. Click **Collapse** to collapse the top menu.
- 10. When you are finished configuring the menu, click **Done**.

### Available Functions for a Menu Tree

Menu Function	Description
Report Active Alarms	Executes the tag report scripts for all active alarms.
Report Unack'ed Alarms	Executes the tag report scripts for all unacknowledged alarms.
Acknowledge All Alarms	Acknowledges all alarms.
Report Active Group	Executes the tag report scripts for all active alarms that belong to a specific operator group. During configuration, you will be prompted to specify the on-call group.
Report Unack'd Group	Executes tag report scripts for all unacknowledged alarms belonging to a specific operator group. During configuration, you will be prompted to specify the on-call group.
Acknowledge Group	Acknowledges all unacknowledged alarms that belong to a specific operator group. During configuration, you will be prompted to specify the on-call group.
Go to Next Menu	Allows you to access a submenu. During configuration, you will be prompted to select or create a new menu.

The following functions are available for a menu tree:

Menu Function	Description
Report Tag	Executes a tag report script. During setup, this gives a list of tag report scripts and allows creation of new ones.
Send eMail Report	Sends an e-mail report to the operator that is currently logged in.
Send eMail Report Group	Sends an e-mail report to all operators in the specified group
Hangup	Disconnects the call.

### **Example Construction of a Menu Tree**

In this example, a menu tree is created that allows the operator to perform the following functions:

DTMF Key	Function
1	Hear the current active alarms.
2	Hear unacknowledged alarms (in either active or clear states).
3	Acknowledge all alarms.
4	Execute an existing tag report script named "stationstatus."
5	Go to a submenu called "Control" that has administrator- only access.
0	Hang up.

#### To construct the menu tree

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Menu Tree**. The **Menu Tree Construction** dialog box appears.
- 2. Record a menu prompt file to describe the functions available to operators with administrator access. This .way file should sound something like this:

"For active alarms, press 1. For unacknowledged alarms, press 2. To acknowledge all alarms, press 3. For station status, press 4. For the station control menu, press 5. To hang up, press 0."

- 3. Double-click in the Administrator box of the Spoken Menu Files area to begin the recording process.
- 4. Record a menu prompt file to describe the functions available to operators with non-administrator access. This .wav file should sound something like the following (note that option 5 is only available to operators with administrator privileges):

"For active alarms, press 1. For unacknowledged alarms, press 2. To acknowledge all alarms, press 3. For station status, press 4. To hang up, press 0."

5. Double-click in the **Non-administrator** box of the **Spoken Menu Files** area to begin the recording process.

For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

- 6. Select the **Show Unused Keys** check box. From the tree view on the left side of the window, highlight the **1** key under the Top Menu. **Menu "Top Menu" Key 1** should be displayed as the Current Menu and Key.
- 7. In the **Phone (DTMF) Key Setup** list, click **Report Active Alarms** and then click **Set**.
- 8. Highlight the 2 key under Top Menu. **Menu "Top Menu" Key 2** should be displayed as the Current Menu and Key.
- 9. In the Phone (DTMF) Key Setup list, click Report Unack'ed Alarms and then click Set.
- 10. Highlight the 3 key under Top Menu. **Menu "Top Menu" Key 3** should be displayed as the Current Menu and Key.
- 11. In the Phone (DTMF) Key Setup list, click Acknowledge All Alarms and then click Set.
- 12. Highlight the 4 key under Top Menu. **Menu "Top Menu" Key 4** should be displayed as the Current Menu and Key.
- 13. In the **Phone (DTMF) Key Setup** list, click **Report Tag**. Select the desired script from list and then click **Set**.
- 14. Highlight the 5 key under Top Menu. **Menu "Top Menu" Key 5** should be displayed as the Current Menu and Key.

15. In the **Phone (DTMF) Key Setup** list, click **Go to Next Menu**. Select the **Administrator-only** check box. The icon for the 5 key will change, indicating that it has administrator-only access. Type Control for the new submenu and create a menu prompt file for this submenu. Click **Set**.

For more information, see "Available Functions for a Menu Tree" on page 124.

The menu tree should appear as follows:

Menu Tree Construction	×
Top Menu Report Active Alarms Acknowledge All Alarms Acknowledge All Alarms Acknowledge All Alarms Go To Next Menu: "Control" So To Next Menu: "Top Menu" Hangup	Current Menu and Key Menu "Top Menu" Key 1 Show Unused Keys Phone (DTMF) Key Setup Report Active Alarms Administrator Administrator-only Spoken Menu Files Administrator DEMOMENU.wav Non-administrator DEMOMENU.wav Done

### **Configuring the Delayed-Answer Ring Count**

Normally, SCADAlarm will answer incoming calls on the first ring. There may be times when you would like a chance to answer the telephone before SCADAlarm does. You can configure SCADAlarm to wait before answering or to not answer the telephone.

**Note** Since SCADAlarm waits for CPID (Caller ID<sup>TM</sup>) information, SCADAlarm will answer as soon as it receives the CPID data, which may be after the second ring begins. The CPID data is received between the first two rings.

### To configure the delayed-answer ring count

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the **Miscellaneous** tab.

System Parameters		
🥒 Logging 📔 🞻 Acknowledgemen 🖃 eMail 🛛 🥦 Miscellaneous 🛛 🧼	ts   🎭 Retrying   🖭 Paging   Preferences   💯 Text-to-Speech	
Local Annunciator Repeat delay (sec)	90	
Delayed-answer Ring Count	5	
<u>S</u> ystem-test Group	Backup	
<u>N</u> umeric-page Test Message	[5]	
Alphanumeric-page Test Message	Hello, [0], SCADAlarm is working	

- 3. In the **Delayed-answer ring count** box, specify the number of rings before SCADAlarm will answer an incoming telephone call.
- 4. Close the dialog box.

Delayed-answer rings are scheduled from the **Control Schedule**. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

### CHAPTER 7

## **Control Schedules**

You can create and save schedules that control how SCADAlarm functions during particular times. SCADAlarm can be scheduled to enable or disable itself any time of day, any day of the week, and on holidays. For a typical schedule, you might disable voice and paging calls at the start of the workday and re-enable them when everyone goes home.

Control schedules are saved as files with the .csk extension. A default schedule file (default.csk) is provided and is set up to always enable calls. A schedule file may be used on more than one day, so if the Tuesday schedule must be different from the other days', be sure it has a different name. A good way to organize schedules is to have one file named "Weekday.csk" and one named "Weekend.csk."

### Contents

- Creating a Control Schedule
- Adding or Deleting Control Schedule Entries
- Creating or Deleting a Schedule File
- Control Types for Schedules
- Defining Holidays

### **Creating a Control Schedule**

### To create a control schedule

1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Schedule**. The **Control Schedule** dialog box appears.

Control Schedule	
Control Schedules Enable Control Schedules Enable Control Schedules Enable Voice Call Enable Local Annunciation Enable Paging Call Enable eMail Notification	Schedule for Thursday uses file: weekday.csk
5:00pm Enable Voice Call Immediate Alarms 1st-ring Answer	Control time 12:00A
Select the schedule control to change	Done

2. In the **Schedule for** list, click the name of the day to which the schedule will apply.

For information on defining a holiday, see "Defining Holidays" on page 133.

3. In the **uses file** list, click the name of the schedule file to use.

For information on creating a new schedule file, see "Creating or Deleting a Schedule File" on page 131.

4. Add or remove entries to the control schedule.

For more information, see "Adding or Deleting Control Schedule Entries" on page 131.

5. Click Done.

### **Adding or Deleting Control Schedule Entries**

#### To add a schedule entry

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Schedule**. The **Control Schedule** dialog box appears.
- 2. In the uses file list, click the name of the schedule file to edit.
- 3. In the **Control time** box, type or select the time for the particular functionality to start.
- 4. In the **Control Type** list, click the SCADAlarm functionality to control for the selected time.

For more information on the different control types, see "Control Types for Schedules" on page 132.

5. Click **Apply** to add the new entry under the appropriate time in the schedule window.

### To delete a schedule entry

- 1. In the schedule window, select the schedule entry.
- 2. Click Remove.

### **Creating or Deleting a Schedule File**

All new schedule files will be based on the default schedule file (default.csk).

#### To create a schedule file

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Schedule**. The **Control Schedule** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click New.
- 3. In the **New Schedule File** box, type in the new filename. The filename can include any characters that are valid for filenames in the Windows operating system.
- 4. Click Set.
- 5. Configure desired schedule entries for the new schedule file. For more information, see "Creating or Deleting a Schedule File" on page 131.

#### To delete a schedule file

1. In Windows Explorer, locate the .csk file and manually delete it.

By default, this file is located in the following folder:

2. Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Wonderware\SCADAlarm

## **Control Types for Schedules**

The following table describes the available control types:

Control Type	Description
Enable/Disable Voice Call	In the event of an alarm, SCADAlarm will dial-out and prompt the operator for a login. After successfully logging in, the operator will navigate the configured menu tree to listen to current alarms/status.
Enable/Disable Local Annunciation	In the event of an alarm, SCADAlarm will annunciate alarms over the local speaker.
Enable/Disable Paging Call	In the event of an alarm, SCADAlarm will dial-out and leave a pager message.
Enable/Disable eMail Notification	In the event of an alarm, SCADAlarm will send an e-mail message.
Delayed/Immediate Alarms	When delayed alarms are enabled, SCADAlarm will not take any action (local or dial-out) until the delay for that particular alarm has expired. Alarm delays are configured on a per-tag basis from the <b>Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition</b> dialog box. For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 77.
# of Answer Rings	The number of rings that SCADAlarm will wait before answering a voice call is configured from the <b>System Parameters</b> dialog box. For more information, see "Configuring the Delayed-Answer Ring Count" on page 127.
Test System	You can schedule a system test based on a particular time. When a system test is executed, SCADAlarm attempts to notify all operators that are members of the "System Test Group." The on-call group ("System Test Group") that is notified during a system test is selected from the <b>System Parameters</b> dialog box. For more information, see "Configuring Automatic System Testing" on page 160.
EMail Report to <group></group>	You can schedule an e-mail report to be sent to a group of operators based on time. The amount of data included in the e-mail report can be configured in the <b>eMail</b> tab of the <b>System Parameters</b> dialog box. For more information, see "Configuring E-mail System Parameters" on page 44.

### **Defining Holidays**

You can designate special days of the year as holidays, so that you can create unique control schedules for them.

The format for dates is: MM/DD. For example, 9/12 is September 12.

#### To create a holiday

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Schedule**. The **Control Schedule** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the Holidays tab.

Control Schedule							- 🗆 ×
🕑 Control Schedules 🖾 Holidays							
	Holiday						
	<u>N</u> ame	New	Holic	lay			
	0 <u>O</u> nl <u>i</u>	y one y	ear	•	Each y	ear thr	ru 2244
			Ар	ril, 20	104		
	Sun I	Vion T	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
		F	~	_	1	2	3
	4	5	b 10	14	8 15	9 10	10
	18	12	10	14	10	10	24
	25	26	27	28	29	30	27
		Ado	1	]	<u>s</u>	jelect	

The window at the left of the dialog box displays all of the configured holidays.

- 3. In the calendar, click on the day to designate as a holiday.
- 4. In the Name box, type the name of the holiday.
- 5. Specify the recurrence of the holiday. Options are as follows:

### Only one year

The holiday will be in effect for only one year.

#### Each year thru 2244

The holiday will be in effect from the year it was created through the year 2244.

6. Click Add.

The new holiday will be added to the list.

### To remove a holiday

- 1. Select the holiday entry in the window.
- 2. Click Remove.
- 3. In the confirmation dialog box, click **OK**.

134

### CHAPTER 8

## **Configuring the Telephone/Speech Driver**

The telephone/speech driver is used to communicate with the hardware devices that SCADAlarm uses for local annunciation, paging, and calling.

### Contents

- Voice Prompts
- Configuring Driver Parameters
- Hardware Devices

### **Voice Prompts**

Voice prompts are .wav files that SCADAlarm can use for alarm reporting.

Supported .wav files must be of Type 1 RIFF (Linear PCM) format, using a subset of sampling parameter values supported by that format:

Parameter	Range	Unit
Sample rate	7,200 - 192,000	Hz
Sample resolution	8 or 16	bit
Channels	1 or 2	

Note that any particular modem's coder-decoder (codec) may not support conversion over the full range of these sampling parameters.

For some modems, multi-channel files may need to be reduced to one channel by averaging each sample set into a single sample. Bit resolutions greater than 16 bits may be truncated to 16 bits; bit resolutions less than 8 may be padded with least-significant zeros to 16 bits.

### **Configuring Voice Prompts**

### To configure voice prompts

1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **Driver Configuration**. The **Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.

2. Click the Voice Prompts tab.

Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration	X
Voice Prompts	🔅 Devices
Play / Record Sound Files	
Play	Record
Place Modem OnHook and Clear Command Qu	ueue
<u>H</u> ang Up	

- 3. Click **Play** to listen to any existing voice (.wav) file. Select the file from the **Play a Voice Prompt File** dialog box that appears. This is how the file will sound to a caller over the telephone or when the file is annunciated locally.
- Click Record to record a new voice prompt file or re-record an existing one. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.
- 5. Click **Hang Up** to command the modem to hang-up the telephone. Typically, you would not need to use this command very often.

### Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt

You can record new voice files or re-record the provided SCADAlarm voice files (files that begin with "Z\_"). If you are planning on re-recording provided SCADAlarm voice files, it is recommended that you back them up first, just in case you ever want to revert to the distribution files.

To record voice files, you will need a microphone attached to the appropriate port on your sound card. This is the recommended method. However, depending on your modem type and the drivers associated with it, you may also be able to record using a built-in microphone on your external modem, or an external microphone connected to the internal modem card.

If possible, use a high-quality microphone and sound card for creating .wav files. You can use the basic Windows Sound Recorder, but the files must be saved in 16-bit 8KHz Mono format. It is good practice to include a brief amount of silence (this could be just a fraction of a second) at the beginning of the file.

You can record a voice prompt from various dialog boxes within the SCADAlarm software.

**Note** The **Telephone** / **Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box is the only place where you can re-record an existing .wav file.

#### To record (or re-record) a voice file

1. To record using the **Telephone** / **Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box, click **Record**.

To record from another dialog box, perform any of the following:

- Double-click in the text box.
- Right-click in the text box. In the menu that appears, click **Browse or Record New Speech File**.

Voice Prompt File	e			? ×
Save jn:	🔁 VoxFiles		💌 🔶 🖻	•
History History Desktop My Documents My Computer	<ul> <li>Hello Bill.wav</li> <li>HIALARM.wav</li> <li>HISETPT.wav</li> <li>Intrusion.wav</li> <li>P1.wav</li> <li>P2.wav</li> <li>P3.wav</li> <li>ReactorLevel.wav</li> <li>TANKLVL.wav</li> </ul> File name:	<ul> <li>Z_0.wav</li> <li>Z_1.wav</li> <li>Z_10.wav</li> <li>Z_100.wav</li> <li>Z_11.wav</li> <li>Z_11.wav</li> <li>Z_12.wav</li> <li>Z_13.wav</li> <li>Z_14.wav</li> <li>Z_15.wav</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Z_16.wav</li> <li>Z_17.wav</li> <li>Z_18.wav</li> <li>Z_19.wav</li> <li>Z_112.wav</li> <li>Z_112.wav</li> <li>Z_112.wav</li> <li>Z_112.wav</li> <li>Z_112.wav</li> <li>Z_12.wav</li> </ul>	∑220.wav         ∑230.wav         ∑230.wav         ∑240.wav         ∑25.wav         ∑250.wav         Z26.wav         Z260.wav
	Save as type: St	CADAlarm Voice File	¥	Cancel
My Network P				<u>H</u> elp

The Voice Prompt File dialog box appears.

2. Type in a new filename to create a new file, or select an existing file to rerecord. 3. If you choose to re-record an existing file, the following message box appears to confirm your action.



The Recorder window appears.



- 4. To record the message, click **Record** and speak clearly.
- 5. To stop recording, click the **Record** button again.

**Note** If record is not pressed, the file will not be changed from the original.

6. To play back your recording, click Review.

### Browsing or Creating a Text-to-Speech File

You can select or create a text-to-speech file from various dialog boxes within the SCADAlarm software.

#### To browse or record a text-to-speech file

1. Right-click in the text box. In the menu that appears, click **Browse or Create New Text File**.

The SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files dialog box appears.

SCADAlarm Text-	to-speech Text I	Files				? ×
Look <u>i</u> n:	Carlies VoxFiles		•	+ 🗈 💣 🖩	<b></b>	
Desktop						
My Documents						
My Computer						
Mu Naturali P	File <u>n</u> ame:			•	<u>(</u>	<u>)</u> pen
My Network P	Files of type:	SCADAlarm TTS prompt text	files (*.	txt) 💌	C	ancel

- 2. Type in a new filename to create a new file, or select an existing file.
- 3. If you type a new file, a message box appears to confirm your action.

SCADAlarm Text-I	to-speech Text Files	×		
BillGreeti This file	ing.txt does not exist.			
Create the file?				
<u>Y</u> es	<u>N</u> o			

4. Click Yes. Notepad will automatically start up.

E B	illGre	eting.txt	- Notepad	- 🗆 🗵
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	F <u>o</u> rmat	Help	
Ple tex rea	ase t. ltin	delete SCADAl Ie Text	e this line and enter your own arm will speak it using its -to-speech features.	4

5. Replace the default message text with the new message text.

6. Close Notepad.

### **Converting Text to a Voice Prompt**

### To convert text to a voice prompt

- 1. On the Access menu, click Send Page or Log Comment.
- 2. If you are not currently logged in as an administrator, you will be prompted to select your name from a list and provide your four-digit PIN to continue.

The Send a Page or Log Comment dialog box appears.

3. Click the **Convert to Audio** tab.

Send a Page or Log a Comment	×
🥒 Content 🔳 Send To 💯 Convert to At	idio
This is my comment to convert to audio.	
L	
Speak text into file:	Preview
Record this in the Log	onvert Skip Comment
This is the audio file into which the text, converted	to speech, will go.

4. In the window, type the text to convert to a .wav file.

Voice Prompt File	2			? ×
Save in:	🔁 VoxFiles		- E 💣	<b>III</b> •
History History Desktop My Documents	Hello Bill.wav         HIALARM.wav         HISETPT.wav         Intrusion.wav         P1.wav         P2.wav         P3.wav         ReactorLevel.wav         TANKLVL.wav	<ul> <li>Z_0.wav</li> <li>Z_1.wav</li> <li>Z_10.wav</li> <li>Z_100.wav</li> <li>Z_110.wav</li> <li>Z_11.wav</li> <li>Z_12.wav</li> <li>Z_13.wav</li> <li>Z_14.wav</li> <li>Z_15.wav</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Z_16.wav</li> <li>Z_17.wav</li> <li>Z_18.wav</li> <li>Z_19.wav</li> <li>Z_1E12.wav</li> <li>Z_1E2.wav</li> <li>Z_1E6.wav</li> <li>Z_1E9.wav</li> <li>Z_129.wav</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Z_20.wav</li> <li>Z_3.wav</li> <li>Z_30.wav</li> <li>Z_4.wav</li> <li>Z_40.wav</li> <li>Z_50.wav</li> <li>Z_50.wav</li> <li>Z_60.wav</li> </ul>
My Computer	File <u>n</u> ame: Save as <u>type</u> : SC	CADAlarm Voice File	• •	<u>S</u> ave Cancel <u>H</u> elp

5. Double-click in the **Speak text into file** box. The **Voice Prompt File** dialog box appears.

- 6. In the **File name** box, type the name of the .wav file to create.
- 7. Click Save. The new file will appear in the Send a Page or Log Comment dialog box.

Send a Page or Log a Comment	<
🥖 Content 🔚 Send To 💯 Convert to Audio	
This is my comment to convert to audio.	
Speak text MyAudioFile.wav Preview Preview	
Record this in the Log     Convert     Skip Comment	
Click here to hear the spoken text.	

8. Click **Preview** to hear the text you have typed spoken.

The text will be spoken according to how you have configured the text-tospeech system parameters. For more information, see "Configuring Textto-Speech Parameters" on page 142.

9. To cancel, click Skip Comment.

10. Click Convert to convert the text and save the file.

A message will appear at the bottom of the dialog box to indicate the status of the conversion.

### **Configuring Text-to-Speech Parameters**

You can configure how the voice for a text-to-speech message will sound to the operator over the phone. For example, whether it is a man or woman's voice, or whether speech is slow or fast.

#### To configure text-to-speech parameters

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the Text-to-Speech tab.

System Parameters	×
🥒 Logging 📔 🞻 Acknowledgements 📔 🇞 Retrying 📗 Paging 🖃 eMail 🛛 😼 Miscellaneous 🛛 🧼 Preferences 🖤 Text-to-Speec	1
✓ Enable Text-to-speech           Preferred voice           Microsoft Mike	
Slow Fast	
This is a test of SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Iest	

- Select the Enable Text-to-speech check box to enable text-to-speech for the entire SCADAlarm system. You will then be able to specify text-tospeech for various configuration options within the SCADAlarm software.
- 4. In the **Preferred voice** list, click the name of the pre-configured voice to use.
- 5. Adjust the Speaking Rate slider to the desired speed of speech.
- 6. In the box, type a test message.
- 7. Click **Test** to listen to the test message according to the settings you have configured.
- 8. Close the dialog box.

# Using the SCADAlarm Sound File Conversion Utility

If you created voice prompts (.vox files) using a previous version SCADAlarm, you will need to convert them to .wav files using the SCADAlarm Sound File Conversion Utility (VConvert.exe). This utility can convert different types of sound files to the .wav file format.

Due to artifacts introduced by the various compression schemes, the conversion process results in varying degrees of intelligibility. In the worst cases, the speech files will need to be re-recorded. All system speech files shipped with SCADAlarm 6.0 or later ( $z_*$ .wav) are provided in native RIFF format.

For more information about this utility, see the utility documentation.

### **Configuring Driver Parameters**

### To configure driver parameters

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **Driver Configuration**. The **Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the **Parameters** tab.

Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration						
Vice Prompts ♀ P <u>a</u> rame		eters	43	👌 <u>D</u> evices		
☐ Show Debug <u>W</u> indow						
Мах	. <u>R</u> ecording Time	30	⊥ ⊥ (seco	nds)		
Phone Line Test						
<u>T</u> est Int	erval (0 Disables)	0	i (minuto	es)		
Number to Dial (typ. SCADAlarm Phone#)		222-222-2222				

- To access The SCADAlarm Telephony State Driver dialog box, click Show Debug Window. For more information, see "Debugging the Telephony State Driver" on page 158.
- 4. In the **Max. Recording Time** box, specify the maximum length of time, in seconds, for a .wav file recording. Valid values are 5 to 120.
- 5. In the **Phone Line Test** area, configure parameters related to phone line testing. For more information about phone line testing, see "Performing a Phone Line Test" on page 159.

6. Close the dialog box.

### **Hardware Devices**

SCADAlarm can only be used with devices that support TAPI. TAPI devices include voice modems, as well as professional telephony cards and PABX systems.

TAPI devices provide the following functionality:

- Device independence.
- Additional hardware and protocol support, such as high-performance telephony cards, T1 lines, and H.323 teleconferencing.
- Multiple COM ports or other I/O devices.
- CPID-based security and auto-login.
- Call progress (CP) detection for improved call termination and diagnostics.
- Support for Windows .wav files instead of proprietary, modem-specific .vox files.
- Support for on-site pager terminals.

You can select different TAPI devices for each of the SCADAlarm functions. For example, you could assign a TAPI data modem for paging (or perhaps just the TAPI null-modem device in the case of on-site paging) and a TAPI Dialogic channel for interactive voice response (IVR) use, with perhaps the second Dialogic channel for backup.

Although multiple channels will be available for different purposes, only one channel will be in use at any given time; that is, multiple simultaneous transactions are not supported.

### Assigning Hardware Devices to SCADAlarm Functions

For each SCADAlarm function, you can assign a hardware device, such as a voice modem or a channel in a Dialogic card. If you are using a Dialogic card, the outgoing and incoming devices can be set to the same device.

#### To assign devices to SCADAlarm functions

1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **Driver Configuration**. The **Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Click the **Devices** tab.

⊈oice Prompts	P <u>a</u> rameters	🤔 <u>D</u> evices
Select the device to	o use for each SCADAlan	m function
Local Annunciation	Control Panel Selected Devic	ce 🔽
Voice Calls/Pages	(None)	
Incoming Voice Calls	(None)	<b>•</b>
Numeric Pager	(None)	<b>•</b>
Alphanumeric Pager	(None)	•
Enable remote ha	ngup (on-hook) detection if su	pported by hardware

If a device is currently in use (for example, SCADAlarm is accepting an incoming call), the device list will be unavailable until the device is idle again.

3. Select the device (or channel) to use for each SCADAlarm function:

#### **Local Annunciation**

The device to be used for local annunciation. SCADAlarm can play the tag report script using any available multimedia hardware (sound card) installed in the SCADAlarm computer. You cannot use a voice modem for local annunciation, as playback on modem devices is not supported by the Windows operating system. The voice messages will be adjusted so that they are annunciated at the same volume level.

#### **Voice Calls/Pages**

The device to be used by SCADAlarm to perform voice calls and/or pages. If a device provides all the features required by an interactive voice response (IVR) call and voice paging (for example, sound playback and/or DTMF detection), it will be listed. If incoming DTMF reporting is not supported, the message will not be interruptible. For interactive voice devices, SCADAlarm will open a line for its exclusive use.

#### **Incoming Voice Calls**

The device to be used to accept all incoming voice calls to SCADAlarm.

### Numeric Pager

The device to be used by SCADAlarm to send numeric pages. If a channel provides all the features required by numeric-only paging (for example, DTMF generation), it will be listed. For the device you select, SCADAlarm will open the line for its exclusive use.

### **Alphanumeric Pager**

The device to be used by SCADAlarm to send alphanumeric pages. If a channel provides all the features required by alphanumeric paging (data connection), it will be listed. For the device you select, SCADAlarm will open the line for its exclusive use. If you are selecting a serial port, set the Pager Service Comm parameter in the .ini file.

- 4. Select the **Enable remote hangup (on-hook) detection if supported by hardware** check box to allow SCADAlarm to call an operator back if the operator hangs up without logging in. This option only pertains to voice calling. For more information, see "Answer and Hangup Detection" on page 146.
- 5. Close the dialog box.

### **Answer and Hangup Detection**

Some devices are capable of detecting if the operator has either answered or hung up the phone. For example, high-end telephony cards support these features. SCADAlarm will take advantage of answer and hangup detection for voice calling.

All voice modem devices and some low-end telephony cards do not support answer and hangup detection; instead, the device merely guesses, based on no ring signal for a few seconds. Therefore, a delay of up to 10 seconds may occur between when an operator answers the phone and when SCADAlarm plays the login request message.

If the device supports answer detection, the delay between when the operator answers the phone and when SCADAlarm plays the message will be the same as for a typical phone call (a few seconds).

If the device is capable of hangup detection, and the operator that SCADAlarm calls for an alarm hangs up before logging in, the hangup will be detected, and SCADAlarm will call the operator again according to the retry settings. For more information on the retry setting, see "Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters" on page 27.

### CHAPTER 9

# Maintenance and Troubleshooting

Information on how to maintain the SCADAlarm system is provided, such as how to back up a project, set up event logging, monitor the system and server status, and troubleshoot error messages. Answers to frequently asked questions are also included.

### Contents

- Backing Up a SCADAlarm Project
- Saving Configuration Information to a File
- Configuring System Parameters
- Logging System Events
- Viewing Status Information
- Debugging the Telephony State Driver
- Performing a Phone Line Test
- Configuring Automatic System Testing
- Troubleshooting Common Problems
- Frequently Asked Questions
- Contacting Technical Support

# **Backing Up a SCADAlarm Project**

You should maintain a regular backup of your project files and store them in a safe place, preferably in a different location than your SCADAlarm computer.

**Note** SCADAlarm project files are not backwards compatible. For example, do not try to restore a Version 5.0.3 project to a computer that has Version 5.00 installed.

### To back up your project files

1. Locate your SCADAlarm project directory. The default project directory is listed below (your project directory may be different):

\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Wonderware\SCADAlarm

- 2. From your SCADAlarm project directory, backup all files with .CAR and .CSK extensions. These are your project database and custom schedule files, respectively.
- 3. Backup your SCADALRM.ini file.
- 4. Change directories to your \Voxfiles directory. By default, the \VoxFiles directory is a subdirectory of your SCADAlarm project directory. Back up all custom recorded .wav files. Typically, this will be all .wav files that do not begin with "Z\_".

#### To restore your project

- 1. Verify that the SCADAlarm software has been properly installed.
- 2. Shut down the SCADAlarm software.
- 3. Copy the backup files to the directories from which you originally backed them up.
- 4. Restart SCADAlarm. If you are restoring project files to a computer with a later version of SCADAlarm, the software will automatically convert the project files to the newer file format.

### Saving Configuration Information to a File

You can save the current system configuration to a text file for documentation purposes.

#### To save the configuration

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **Dump configuration to File**. The **Save As** dialog box appears.
- 2. Browse to the folder in which to save the file.
- 3. In the File name box, type a name for the .txt file.
- 4. Click Save.

# **Configuring System Parameters**

System settings are configured from the **System Parameters** window. Once the system configuration is complete, the system parameters should rarely (if at all) require future modifications.

### To configure system parameters

1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.

System Parameters
🖃 eMail   🛸 Miscellaneous   🧼 Preferences   💯 Text-to-Speech   🥕 Logging   🎻 Acknowledgements   🗞 Retrying   📰 Paging
Enable Logging
SCADAlarm Logfile.txt
File size limit (k): 4,096
◯ Log to <u>P</u> rinter on: LPT1

### 2. Configure the relevant parameters.

For information on logging parameters, see "Enabling and Configuring Logging" on page 150.

For information on acknowledgement parameters, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.

For information on retrying parameters, see "Configuring Telephone Retrying Parameters" on page 27.

For information on paging parameters, see "Configuring Paging Parameters" on page 32.

For information on e-mail parameters, see "Configuring E-mail System Parameters" on page 44.

For information on miscellaneous parameters, see "Configuring the Local Annunciation Repeat Delay" on page 26, "Adding a Delay to a Voice Pager Message" on page 40, and "Performing a Phone Line Test" on page 159.

For information on preference parameters, see "Configuring General Preferences for SCADAlarm" on page 22.

For information on text-to-speech parameters, see "Configuring Text-to-Speech Parameters" on page 142.

3. Close the dialog box.

# **Logging System Events**

Logging can be switched off or on and directed to a printer or disk file. The log will include a timestamp for the events and an operator ID, if available. System events will be logged when:

- SCADAlarm is started or stopped.
- Operators are called or paged.
- Operators log in over the telephone and actions are performed over the telephone.
- Alarms are acknowledged.
- Changes to system configuration have occurred. For example, changes to tag database, system parameters, and so on.
- A tag value has changed, if logging is enabled for that tag.

## **Enabling and Configuring Logging**

### To enable and configure logging

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the **Logging** tab.

System Parameters
<ul> <li>eMail</li> <li>Miscellaneous</li> <li>Preferences</li> <li>Text-to-Speech</li> <li>Logging</li> <li>Acknowledgements</li> <li>Retrying</li> <li>Paging</li> </ul>
☑ Enable Logging
SCADAlarm Logfile.txt
File size limit (k): 4,096
◯ Log to <u>P</u> rinter on: LPT1

- 3. To enable logging, select the **Enable Logging** check box.
- 4. To log to a printer, click **Log to Print on** and then click the appropriate printer port from the list.
- 5. To log to a file, click **Log to file** and then configure the following logging options.

The current path to the log file is displayed.

To change the location, click the folder 😕

button.

### **Include Date in Filename**

If selected, SCADAlarm will generate one log file per day. If not selected, a single log file will be generated.

### File size limit (k)

Specify the maximum size of the log file. When the file reaches the maximum size, the oldest entries will be deleted.

6. Close the dialog box.

# Sending Log Reports via E-mail

You can configure SCADAlarm to send an e-mail report that contains 1 to 24 hours of log activity. This report is sent when requested by the operator on the phone or via the control schedule.

**Note** Do not attempt to send e-mail reports to alphanumeric pagers, as the size of the report will swamp the pager service.

### **Scheduling Log Reports**

### To schedule e-mail reports

1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.

152

### 2. Click the eMail tab.

System Parameters	x
🥒 Logging 📔 🞻 Acknowledgements 📔 🎭 Retrying 📄 🖆 Miscellaneous 🛛 🧇 Preferences 🗍 💯	Text-to-Speech
Mail (SMTP) Server <u>E</u> na Server name or IP address	ble eMail 🔲 –
mail.proxyemail.com	
Login name     eMail address     20: this a       mylogin     me@proxyemail.com	iccount 🔽
Scheduled Log Reports Send to Backup include	24 <u>+</u>
All eMail functions are disabled.	

- 3. Select the Enable eMail check box.
- 4. In the **Send to group** list, click the name of the group that is to receive scheduled reports.

You might want to create a special operator group that will receive log reports. For example, an "Email Recipients" operator group.

- 5. In the **Hours to include** box, type or select the number of hours of log activity that should be reported. For example, if you schedule an e-mail report to be sent at 6:00 p.m. and specify eight hours of activity, the report will cover the time period between 10:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m.
- 6. Close the dialog box.
- 7. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Schedule**. The **Control Schedule** dialog box appears.

8. Add the schedule item **eMail Report to <groupname> group** for the time (and the day or holiday) you want to send the report.

🍅 Control Schedule	<u>-0×</u>
Control Schedules	
12:00am eMail Report to Backup group 1st-ring Answer Delayed Alarms Enable Voice Call Enable Local Annunciation Enable Paging Call	Schedule for Monday  Uses Default.csk  New  Control time 12:00A  Control type eMail Report to Backup group  Apply  Bemove  Done
	/i.

For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."

### 9. Click Done.

A log activity report will be sent to everyone in the group who has an e-mail address.

### Adding a Log Report Request to a Menu Tree

You can configure a menu tree to include options for sending a log activity report via e-mail to the operator that has called in and/or a particular operator group.

### To add a log report request to a menu tree

1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Menu Tree**. The **Menu Tree Construction** dialog box appears.

Menu Tree Construction	×			
□       Top Menu         □       Report Active Alarms         □       Report Unack'ed Alarms         □       Acknowledge All Alarms         □       Report Active Group: "Backup"         □       Go To Next Menu: "Control"         □       Send eMail Report         □       Send eMail Report         □       Send eMail Report Group: "Backup"         □       Send eMail Report         □       Send eMail Report Group: "Backup"         □       (available for use)         □       (available for use)         □       (available for use)         □       Hangup	Current Menu and Key Menu "Top Menu" Key 6 Show Unused Keys Phone (DTMF) Key Setup Send eMail Report Administrator-only Backup Spoken Menu Files Administrator DEMOMENU.wav Non-administrator DEMOMENU.wav Non-administrator DEMOMENU.wav Done			
List of menus and their keys that a caller can use to make selections				

2. Select an unused key and then set it to one of the e-mail report options:

#### Send eMail Report

When the operator presses the key associated with this function, he/she will receive a log activity report.

### Send eMail Report Group

When the operator presses the key associated with this function, a log activity report will be sent to the operator group that you specify.

For either option, if the report is successfully sent, the operator will hear "The e-mail request has been processed." If the operator (or operator group) does not have an active e-mail address, the operator will hear "The eMail request has been cancelled."

3. Click Done.

For more information on configuring menu trees, see "Telephone Menu Trees" on page 120.

### Manually Entering Comments into the Log File

In order to enter comments in the log file (logfile.txt), logging must be enabled for the system. For more information, see "Enabling and Configuring Logging" on page 150.

### To enter a comment into the log file

1. On the Access menu, select Send Page or Log Comment. The Send a Page or Log a Comment dialog box appears.

Send a Page or Log a Comment				
🥖 Content 📘 🖭 Send To 🔛 Convert to Audio				
Comment from Bill Monroe (001) Wed 7/28/2004 11:59am				
Frecord this in the Log Submit	Skip Comment			
Enter your comment or page text here.				

- 2. In the text entry box, type the comment that you want to appear in the log.
- 3. Click Submit.
- 4. Close the dialog box.

The following is an example of a manual entry that appears in the log file:

Tue 11-07-2000 5:32p Oper 001: Comment entered by Bill Monroe

This is a comment. All the edit features of Windows are available, including Word wrap, highlighting, and cut-and-paste. (end of comment)

# **Viewing Status Information**

SCADAlarm provides status information that may be helpful during the configuration and troubleshooting of a SCADAlarm project.

### **Viewing System Status**

### To view system status

1. On the Access menu, click System Status. The System Status dialog box appears.

2. Click the Status tab.

System Status			×
燥 Status  🦉 Iech Supp	ort Information	🛃 Ser <u>v</u> er	
Last Event Tag "TankLevel.LoStatus":	Clear	· · ·	
Last DDE / SuiteLink EMailServerFail (ACK)			
Voice Dialer Local annunciation Paging Email patification (n/a)	enabled enabled enabled		
Answer Alarm Delays	1st ring enabled	Always-on-top 🔽	
Thu 10/07/2004 2:27pm		IdleOn Hook	

3. The following system information is displayed:

### Last Event

Indicates what the SCADAlarm software is *trying* to do. The **Last Event** field displays the last system event and the date and time when it occurred. Tag acknowledgement, voice dialing, paging, and local annunciation are examples of system events.

### Last DDE / SuiteLink

The last message to/from the server (HMI).

### Voice Dialer

Indicates whether voice dialing is currently enabled or disabled.

#### Local annunciation

Indicates whether local annunciation is currently enabled or disabled.

### Paging

Indicates whether paging is currently enabled or disabled.

### **Email notification**

Indicates whether e-mail is currently enabled or disabled.

### Answer

The number of rings before SCADAlarm will answer an incoming telephone call.

### **Alarm Delays**

Indicates whether alarm delays are currently enabled or disabled.

4. To re-enable SCADAlarm, click Re-enable.

When SCADAlarm is disabled via the **Disable SCADAlarm from <Server>** tag (if configured), the **Re-enable** button is visible on the **System Status** window. For more information, see "Example: Disable SCADAlarm Tag" on page 91.

Clicking the **Re-enable** button will immediately enable all SCADAlarm functions (except those disabled by the **Control Schedule**).

The **Re-enable** button will be unavailable if nobody is logged in at the computer console.

- 5. Select the **Always-on-top** check box if you want the dialog box to always appear as the top-most dialog box on the computer screen.
- 6. Close the dialog box.

The system information can help you in troubleshooting the system. For example, if SCADAlarm is not calling out, it may be because the voice dialer is disabled. If "No dialtone" is shown for the last event, this may lead you to check your telephone line connection to the SCADAlarm modem.

### **Viewing Technical Support Information**

### To view technical support information

- 1. On the Access menu, select System Status. The System Status dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the **Tech Support Information** tab.

Cystem Status	🏷 System Status				
燥 <u>S</u> tatus 🔮 <u>T</u> ech Supp	ort Information				
SCADAlarm Version 6.0 Build 6.0.0.633 Invensys Systems, Inc. (US) 949-727-3200 For Technical Support call (US) 1-800-WONDER1 (1-800-966-3371)					
Company: Test Customer, Seri Logged in: Bill Monroe (001) Library VOXDRV32.DLL version Library VOXAPI32.DLL version Library SFCVTL32.DLL version Library WWCLINTF.DLL version Library WWSALIC.DLL version 6. Library SWWB.DLL version 6. Library SWWTE.DLL version 6. Si Windows 2000 (5.0 build RAM used: Primary 228,004k Disk used: C: 6,065,960k of 6 Last Log: Fri 8/27/2004 12:33 InTouch (DDE:VIEW]TAGNAM	al Number: 000000, Expires (never) on 6.0.0.592 [00A00000] h 6.0.0.39 [03400000] h 6.0.0.12 on 117.78.0.0 [10000000] h 6.0.0.1 0.0.0 [01E60000] 5.0.0.0 [01870000] 2195) Service Pack 4 of 261,616k; Total 224,316k of 435,556k .317,220k Apm Started 7 conversations with Data Server ME]				
Fri 8/27/2004 12:40pm	IdleOn Hook				

This dialog box displays information on how to contact technical support and system information that may be helpful in diagnosing problems.

3. Close the dialog box.

## **Viewing Server Status**

You can view the status of all servers configured for use with SCADAlarm.

- 1. On the Access menu, select System Status. The System Status dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the Server tab.



3. Select the **Color** check box to have the window background change color depending on the current status of configured servers.

Status colors are:

- Green: All configured servers are working.
- Yellow: At least one configured server has failed.
- Red: All configured servers have failed.
- 4. Close the dialog box.

# **Debugging the Telephony State Driver**

The **SCADAlarm Telephony State Driver** dialog box displays the commands being sent to the telephony hardware. You can use this dialog box as a debugging monitor. For example:

he SCADAlarm Telephony S	tate Driver 📃 🔳 🗙
<u>C</u> lear Window	☑ Debug Details ON ☑ Always On Top
Initializing Device Driver 6.0.0 Command Queue Cleared Page 33600e7 = 7 bits, E-parity ->Q<-Enab I/O Set 2 <-Q-> Enab I/O Set 2 [00400-00080_ANSWERENABLED] Do the WDT stroke 600	
	V

Select the **Debug Details ON** check box if you want the commands to be displayed as they are sent.

Select **Always on Top** if you want this dialog box to always appear in front of other open software applications on the computer desktop.

Click Clear Window to clear the window of all information.

# **Performing a Phone Line Test**

You can configure SCADAlarm to periodically test the operation of the phone line. Used in conjunction with the Dead Phone Line system tag, a periodic phone line test may help alert you to potential problems while there is still time for corrective action. SCADAlarm tests the line by dialing its own telephone number. If it detects a busy signal, the phone line is functioning normally. If no dial tone is detected, the line is considered to have failed.

### To configure a phone line test

1. Configure a Dead Phone Line system tag.

For more information, see "Example: Dead Phone Line Tag" on page 91.

- 2. On the **Configuration** menu, click **Driver Configuration**. The **Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.
- 3. Click the Parameters tab.
- 4. In the **Test Interval** box, type the amount of time, in minutes, between phone line tests. To disable the phone line test, set this option to 0.

- 5. In the **Number to Dial** box, type the telephone number of the phone line connected to the SCADAlarm modem.
- 6. Close the dialog box.

# **Configuring Automatic System Testing**

You can configure SCADAlarm to perform a system test automatically at a pre-determined time(s) of day. For example, if you leave work at 5:00 p.m., you may want to schedule a system test to be performed at 6:00 p.m. to your home telephone or pager. That way, you can be sure that SCADAlarm is working properly.

When SCADAlarm performs a system test, it will call all of the operators in a specified system test operator group. The first available telephone number (or e-mail address) for each operator will be called. No acknowledgement is required for a system test.

System tests are performed according to the control schedule.

If SCADAlarm calls a voice telephone, it will:

- 1. Announce itself
- 2. Speak its telephone number (optional).
- 3. Speak the system test group .wav file. (For example, "This is a System Test.")
- 4. Speak the time of day.

If SCADAlarm calls a numeric pager, it will leave the numeric-page test message. If SCADAlarm calls an alphanumeric pager or e-mail address, it will leave the alphanumeric-page test message.

## **Creating a System Test Operator Group**

The system test group is the group of operators that you want SCADAlarm to call during the system test.

### To create a system test group

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Group On-Call Lists. The Group Oncall Lists dialog box appears.

Group (	On-call Lists	5				×
<u>⊢G</u> ro	up					
B	ackup		-	· <u>N</u> ew	Rena <u>m</u> e	Delete
	<u>S</u> poken Grou	p Name				
					I	
		> <u>A</u> dd	to Group >	< <u>H</u> emove f	rom Group <	-
Ope	erators NO <u>T</u> in	n this group		These Oper	ators are ON <u>C</u> A	ALL
1002	Bill Monroe			UUI Demon:	stration Mode	
						Dena
						Done

- 2. Click New.
- 3. In the **New Group Name** box, type a name for the new system test group. For example, "TestGroup."
- 4. Click Set.
- 5. Add the operators for the system test group to the **These Operators are ON CALL** window.
- 6. Right-click in the **Spoken Group Name** box and then click **Browse or Record New File**.
- Record a .wav file that describes the system test. For example, "This is a System Test." For more information on recording a .wav file, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.
- 8. Click **Done** to save the newly defined group.

# Specifying the System Test Operator Group

### To specify the system test operator group

- 1. On the **Configuration** menu, click **System Parameters**. The **System Parameters** dialog box appears.
- 2. Click the Miscellaneous tab.

System Parameters	×
🥒 Logging 📔 🞻 Acknowledgement 🖃 eMail 🛛 😻 Miscellaneous 🛛 🧼	ts   🎭 Retrying   🖭 Paging   Preferences   💯 Text-to-Speech
Local Annunciator Repeat delay (sec)	90
Delayed-answer Ring Count	5
<u>S</u> ystem-test Group	Backup
<u>N</u> umeric-page Test Message	[5]
Alphanumeric-page Test Message	Hello, [0], SCADAlarm is working

- 3. In the **System-test Group** list, click the name of the group that SCADAlarm will notify for the system test.
- 4. In the **Numeric-page Test Message** and **Alphanumeric-page Test Message** boxes, specify the system test message that will appear on the pager, if the test results are sent to a pager.
- 5. Close the dialog box.

# Adding a System Test to the Control Schedule

### To schedule the system test

- 1. On the **Maintenance** menu, click **Schedule**. The **Control Schedule** dialog box appears.
- 2. In the **Control time** box, type or select the time for the system test to start.
- 3. In the Control Type list, click Test System to <groupname>.

The group name that you specified in the **Miscellaneous** tab of the **System Parameters** window will appear for the **<groupname>**.

4. Click Apply.

A System Test to <groupname> group entry should appear in the schedule window.

# **Troubleshooting Common Problems**

The following sections provide troubleshooting information for common problems.

### **Error: Device Not Working**

If SCADAlarm cannot communicate with one of the configured devices, the **Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration** dialog box will appear and show the device highlighted in yellow in the **Devices** tab when SCADAlarm is restarted.

Troubleshoot the device according to the manufacturer's documentation. You can also select another device from the list, if another one is available. You will need to shut down or restart SCADAlarm to connect to a device.

### Error: "License File Not Found"

If the following dialog box appears, click **Abort** and reinstall a valid SCADAlarm license file. To install a license file, point to the Wonderware program group, then the Common program group, and then run the **Wonderware License Utility**. If you click **Ignore**, SCADAlarm will run in demonstration mode for two hours.



### Error: "Assign Fail"

The "Assign fail" error occurs when the driver is not installed properly for a modem. Check that you have the most recent driver installed.

## **Timing Issues with Numeric Pagers**

If you have configured your SCADAlarm system to call a numeric pager and pages are not being received, it could possibly be due to timing issues between the modem and the paging service provider.

If the device does not support answer detection, when SCADAlarm dials out, there can be a slight delay (up to six seconds) before the SCADAlarm hardware detects that the telephone has been answered. Your numeric paging service provider may be "giving up" and hanging up the telephone before SCADAlarm detects that the telephone has been answered and leaves a message on the pager.

#### To work around this timing issue

- 1. Start SCADAlarm.
- 2. On the **Maintenance** menu, point to **Operator** and then click **Change Operator**. The **Select-an-operator** dialog box appears.
- 3. Select an operator that is using a numeric pager and then click **Continue**. The **Edit / Change Operator Information** dialog box appears.
- 4. Click the How to Contact tab.
- 5. Add two commas (,,) followed by an asterisk (\*) to the end of the numeric pager telephone number. For example, if the numeric pager telephone number is 5551212, modify it as follows:

5551212,,\*

- 6. Click Done.
- 7. Repeat steps 3 through 6 for each operator that is using a numeric pager.

A comma (,) tells the SCADAlarm hardware to wait for two seconds. This modification has the following effect:

Dial the pager number (5551212), wait four seconds, then press the asterisk (\*) key.

This keeps the numeric paging service provider "interested" just long enough to allow SCADAlarm time to determine that the telephone has been answered and to leave its message. You may need to experiment with the number of commas required to make SCADAlarm compatible with your paging service provider.

### **Frequently Asked Questions**

#### Q: I forgot my PIN number. How do I get in?

A: Get an administrator to change your PIN number to one you can easily remember. If you are the only administrator, uninstall SCADAlarm, delete the directory it was in, reinstall it, and start over again. Security is a serious issue, and there are no "back doors" into SCADAlarm.

# Q: When I start SCADAlarm, I don't hear the "This is SCADAlarm" message.

A: Be sure the volume on your sound card is turned up. Windows does not support the use of the modem's internal speaker, so the multimedia hardware on your computer is used for this announcement and for local annunciation. If you want, you can add a second sound card for use only by SCADAlarm.

# Q: I don't see any indication that SCADAlarm has a problem with the hardware (that is, no dialog box appears stating that there has been a failure), so why don't I hear the "This is SCADAlarm" message?

A: If you have the internal version, check that the sound blaster or speaker cable is plugged in and the speaker is turned up. If it is external and you plugged in a speaker, be sure the speaker is on and turned up.

# Q: My HMI system is running. Why am I not receiving tag data values in SCADAlarm?

A: Verify your DDE/ SuiteLink server and topic definitions and verify that the server is running. For information on how to do this, see the documentation for your HMI. Be sure that the SCADAlarm tags are configured for the right server.

# Q: I don't get local annunciation, or I hear local annunciation when I don't want it. What do I do?

A: Be sure the scheduler is set to enable or disable local annunciation as needed. If annunciation was left enabled yesterday, it will stay enabled until the next scheduled disable time, and vice versa.

# Q: Everything is set up just fine. Why doesn't SCADAlarm call me, page me, or send me an e-mail?

A: SCADAlarm must be able to dial out. Check the following:

- 1. Check the call group for the alarm in question. Verify that at least one operator belongs to the call group for the alarm. For more information, see "Group On-Call Lists" on page 58.
- 2. The on-call operator(s) must have a least one telephone, pager number, or e-mail account scheduled. Verify this according to the operator's calling preferences. For more information, see "Calling Preferences for Operators" on page 55.
- Voice calls and/or pager calls and/or e-mail must be enabled in the control schedule. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Control Schedules."
- 4. In the Alarms / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, verify that the Value when ON or in Alarm box on the Tag tab is correct for the alarm tagname in question. Compare the value in this box with the value of the Current Value box. Remember, values for this box are case-sensitive. For more information, see "Configuring Tag Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 68.

# Q: When an alarm occurs, SCADAlarm dials the telephone. However, when I answer, I just hear the time of day, and SCADAlarm hangs up on me.

A: If you have not constructed a menu tree, or if the top menu prompt file does not exist, SCADAlarm will speak the "This is SCADAlarm" greeting, speak the time of day, then hang up. For more information on the menu tree, see "Telephone Menu Trees" on page 120.

# Q: When an alarm is tripped, the SCADAlarm "Alarm" window appears, and then disappears almost instantly, or the alarm only shows momentarily in the window.

A: If you have configured e-mail, the e-mail has been sent and the **Acknowledge when Delivered** check box is selected for the alarm in question. This check box appears on the **Alarm** tab of the **Alarms / Tag Data Point Definition** dialog box. For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 77.

# **Contacting Technical Support**

Prior to contacting technical support, please first consult this documentation for a possible solution to any problem you may have with the software.

If you need to contact technical support, please have the following information available:

- 1. The version of software you are running.
- 2. The type and version of the operating system you are using.
- 3. The exact wording of system error messages encountered.
- 4. Any relevant output listing from the SCADAlarm log file, any Microsoft diagnostic utilities, or any other diagnostic applications.
- 5. Details of the attempts you made to solve the problem(s) and your results.
- 6. Details of how to recreate the problem.
- 7. If this is an on-going problem, the Wonderware Technical Support case number assigned to your problem (if known).

The version numbers for SCADAlarm and the operating system appear in the **Tech Support Information** tab in the **System Status** dialog box. For more information, see "Viewing Technical Support Information" on page 157.

### CHAPTER 10

# Integration with HMI Applications

SCADAlarm can integrate with many different HMI systems. Some of the SCADAlarm configuration settings will vary, based on the HMI you are using. In general, you will need to:

- Configure the HMI application as the SCADAlarm data server.
- Create a SCADAlarm alarm tag for each HMI tag for which you want to generate an alarm. You can use the SCADAlarm tag import functionality to easily import tags from InTouch and Industrial Application Server.
- Set up how the alarm acknowledgement will be sent to the HMI.

For some HMIs, you can also configure SCADAlarm to start up when the HMI starts.

### Contents

- Using SCADAlarm with InTouch
- Using SCADAlarm with Industrial Application Server
- Using SCADAlarm with Ci Technologies Citect®
- Using SCADAlarm with Intellution® iFIX®
- Using SCADAlarm with National Instruments® Lookout<sup>TM</sup>
- Using SCADAlarm with Rockwell® Software RSView®32<sup>TM</sup>
- Using SCADAlarm with Siemens® SIMATIC® WinCC®

# **Using SCADAlarm with InTouch**

For information on versions of InTouch that are supported with SCADAlarm, see the FactorySuite Compatibility Matrix that is published on the Wonderware web site (www.wonderware.com).

### Configuring InTouch as the Data Server

To configure InTouch as the data server, use **VIEW** as the application name and **TAGNAME** as the topic. The InTouch DDE Server starts automatically whenever **WindowViewer** is running. For the Windows XP and 2003 operating systems, DDE is not supported; therefore, SuiteLink should be used.

If the InTouch application is running on a different computer than SCADAlarm, simply provide the name of the InTouch node.

For example:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [none are d	efined]
(new alarm: notify an operato	r)
📴 👖 😹 Server 🕅 💁 On / Off 🔯 Alarm	🕼 <u>G</u> roups
New Server Name	New Server Delete Server
Server Enable Changes Enable This Server	Browse
☑ On other network node: Node1	Application VIEW Topic
Server Type	TAGNAME
DDE	Ac <u>k</u> nowledgment Details
<u>≤</u> < <u>New</u> Delete	>≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script ▲ Apply <u>D</u> one
Name of the network computer for this server	

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

### Importing InTouch Alarm Definitions

From within SCADAlarm, you can browse the list of tags in an InTouch database and then select any associated alarm definitions to import into the SCADAlarm database. This allows you to quickly and easily create alarm definitions in the SCADAlarm for InTouch tags.

In order for you to import tags from an InTouch application, the following requirements must be met:

- The InTouch browser components are installed.
- The specified application and topic are correct for InTouch.
- If InTouch is installed on the local computer, the local application exists.
- If InTouch is installed on a remote computer, the InTouch application directory must be shared, and the SCADAlarm administrator must have write permission to it. (You may discontinue sharing after you have imported the tags.)

For an InTouch discrete alarm, the tag importer will add one item to the SCADAlarm database. For example, DiscreteTag1.Alarm.

An InTouch numeric (analog) alarm is associated with either an integer or real (floating point) tag and is classified as either a value alarm, deviation alarm, or rate-of change alarm. The tag importer will add one item to the SCADAlarm database for each of these configured alarms, if selected. For example, AnalogTag1.HiHiStatus.

The SCADAlarm tag importer will not create an item if the alarm is not already configured in InTouch.

SCADAlarm will not import information for certain types of tags because they do not have associated alarm information. For example, trends and pen IDs. All discarded tags are noted in the SCADAlarm log file.

### To import InTouch tags

1. Configure InTouch as the data server. For more information, see "Configuring InTouch as the Data Server" on page 168.

2. If you have previously imported tags from an InTouch application on a remote node and want to import from a different application, click **Locate Application**. Otherwise, skip to step 4.

The Locate InTouch dialog box appears.

Locate InTouch	<
Please locate your InT ouch application on c04  Entire Network  Application Data  Application Data  ArchestrA  ArchestrA	
<u>F</u> ound <u>C</u> ancel	

3. Browse to the directory that contains the InTouch application and then click **Found**.

4. In the Server tab of the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Browse button.

If InTouch is on a different node, and this is the first time you are importing tags, the **Locate InTouch** dialog box appears. Browse to the directory that contains the InTouch application and then click **Found**. Once you have specified the application location for a remote node, the path will be stored in SCADAlarm, and you will no longer be prompted for the path. If you need to change the application, click **Locate Application** on the **Server** tab and select the new application location.

ay manics.		[		
lagname	fag Type	Access Name	Alarm Group	
🛍 PassWord	Memory Message		\$System	
Pen04	Tag ID		Reactor	
ProdLevel	Memory Real		Reactor	
ReactLevel	Memory Real		Reactor	
🗞 Reactor	Group Var		\$System	
ReactTemp	Memory Real		Reactor	
🖥 SetPoint	Memory Integer		Reactor	
🛛 Speed	Memory Real		Conveyor	
SteamValve	Memory Discrete		Reactor	
🖥 Step1	Memory Integer		Reactor	
🖁 TransferPump	Memory Discrete		Reactor	
🖁 TransferValve	Memory Discrete		Reactor	
🖉 VerticalMove	Memory Real		\$System	
27 Vitesse	Memory Real		¢Svstem	Ľ
2 Vitesse	Memory Real		\$System	Ē

The SCADAlarm InTouch Browser dialog box appears.

- 5. In the **Filter** list, select the name of the filter to apply to the list of tag names.
- 6. In the **Tag Names** list, select the tags to be imported into the SCADAlarm database.

For more information on using the tag browser, see your InTouch documentation.

E Numaria Valua		Tage selected for import from InTouch:
		Tags selected for import from firf ouch.
Speak for Engr. <u>U</u> nits:		D: SteamValve (Heating valve)
Import these alarms, if present:		N: ReactLevel (Reactor level)
🗖 High High		
☐ <u>H</u> igh	✓ Import Priorities	
Low	set all tax High	
Low Low	secondo, man	
Major Deviation		
Minor Deviation		
Rate Of Change		
Import Alarm, if present	Priority set to: High	
🔽 Speak <u>w</u> hen Off:	🔽 Spea <u>k</u> when On:	
Z_CLEAR.wav	Z_ALARM.wav	
Common to All Alarms		Importing a new tag if its name already e <u>x</u> ists
Notify on Clear	Notify when Acknowledged	Skip it C Replace old C Rename new
Call Group: Backup	<b>▼</b>	
<u></u>		

7. Click OK. The Tag Import Filter dialog box appears.

Using the **Tag Import Filter** dialog box, you can easily import all of the tag definitions in an entire InTouch application.

- In the Tags selected for import from <Server Name> window, select the tag(s) whose definitions you want to import.
- 9. In the **Numeric Tag and Alarm Data** group, configure the numeric (real or integer) alarms that you want to include in the import for the selected tag(s).

SCADAlarm can generate up to eight items for numeric alarms, depending on what is configured in InTouch. For example, if you select the **Low** and **Low Low** check boxes, and the numeric tag has low and/or low-low alarms configured in InTouch, the importer will create the alarm tags in SCADAlarm, possibly in addition to the actual numeric tag. If you select a numeric alarm check box, and the tag(s) to import were not configured to generate this type of alarm in InTouch, tags will not be generated for them.

### **Numeric Value**

Select this check box to import the actual numeric tag, in addition to the alarms associated with the numeric tag.

### Speak for Engr. Units

Select this check box to specify the name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken whenever the numeric value of the tag is used in a tag report script. For example, a Feet.wav file might say "feet." Whenever the value of a tag TankLevel is spoken in a tag report script, "feet" will be spoken after the numeric value. For example, "Thirteen point four six feet." For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

### High High

The alarm tag will be appended with the .HiHiStatus field.

### High

The alarm tag will be appended with the .HiStatus field.

### Low

The alarm tag will be appended with the .LoStatus field.

### Low Low

The alarm tag will be appended with the .LoLoStatus field.

### **Major Deviation**

The alarm tag will be appended with the .MajorDevStatus field.

### **Minor Deviation**

The alarm tag will be appended with the .MinorDevStatus field.

### **Rate Of Change**

The alarm tag will be appended with the .AlarmROC field.

### Priorities

Select this check box to import the alarm priorities for the alarm dotfields as they are configured in the server.

### Set to

The alarm priority to use for all numeric alarm types instead of the priorities that were configured in the server.

10. In the **Discrete Tag and Alarm Data** group, configure the discrete alarms that you want to include in the import for the selected tag(s).

### Import Alarm, if present

Select this check box to import any discrete alarms associated with the selected tags.

### Priority

Select this check box to import the alarm priority for the discrete alarm as it is configured in the server. InTouch alarm priorities 200 through 999 will be mapped to SCADAlarm priority 200.

### Set to

The alarm priority to use for all discrete alarms.

### Speak when Off

The name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken by SCADAlarm to describe the "normal" state of the tag. A spoken normal state of "CLEARED" (Z\_CLEAR.wav) is the default.

Double-click or right-click on the box to select or change the voice prompt file. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

#### Speak when On

The name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken by SCADAlarm to describe the "alarm" state of the tag. A spoken alarm state of "IN ALARM" (Z ALARM.wav) is the default.

11. In the **Common to All Alarms** group, configure the operator group to associate with the tag.

### Notify on Clear

If this check box is selected, a notification will be sent to the group when the alarm condition clears or recurs.

#### Notify when Acknowledged

If this check box is selected, a notification will be sent to the group when the alarm has been acknowledged.

### **Call Group**

Select this check box to specify the name of the group of operators to be called when the tag goes into alarm.

### Also call

Select this check box to specify the name of an additional group to notify if an alarm occurs. For more information, see "Alarm Notification for an "Also Notify" Operator Group" on page 80.

12. In the **Importing a new tag if its name already exists** group, configure how you want duplicate tags handled.

### Skip it

If selected, the new alarm tag to import will be skipped.

#### **Replace old**

If selected, the existing alarm tag in the SCADAlarm database will be replaced with the new alarm tag.

#### Rename new

If selected, the new tag will be renamed if the importer encounters a naming conflict. The tooltip shows the naming convention for the renamed tag(s).

13. Click **Import** to import the alarm definitions for the selected tag(s). Each tag in the window becomes deselected as it is imported. The **Import Done** dialog box appears.

Import Done 🛛 🔀	
Imported 1 tag Updated 0 tags Ignored 0 tags There were 0 errors.	
Would you like to remove from the list all the tags you've used?	
<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o	

- 14. To remove the imported tags from the **Tags selected for import from InTouch** window, click **Yes**. Otherwise, click **No**. If you clicked **Yes**, and all of the tags listed in the window have been imported, the **Tag Import Filter** dialog box will close.
- 15. To import additional tags that are listed in the window, repeat steps 8 through 14.
- 16. To close the **Tag Import Filter**, click **Close**. The **Alarm** / **Tag Data Point Definition** dialog box appears. The imported tags appear in the list at the bottom of the dialog box.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [6 are defin	ed] 🗵 🗵
SteamValve.alarm	
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🛐 💁 On / Off 🔯 Alarm	🕼 Groups
Server Name	New Server Dolate Conver
Inlouch 💽	
Enable Changes	
Enable This Server	Browse
On other network node:	Application
	VIEW
	Topic
Server Type	Acknowledgment Details
Contraction (Contraction)	Edit Tag Papert Sprint
SteamValve.alarm (Heating valve Alarm)	Apply <u>D</u> one

17. Click Apply.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [6 are defined]
SteamValve.alarm
📴 Iag 🔜 Server 🕥 On / Off 🔯 Alarm 🐼 Groups
Alarm / Tag
Name Enable Alarm
SteamValve.alarm On or In Alarm 1
Description
Heating valve Alarm Current Value
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm
Server Item
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:     SteamValve.alarm
SteamValve.ack 🔽 🗾 Use Tag Name
Type of Connection
Get data from InTouch
≤<     New     Delete     >≥     Edit Tag Report Script       SteamValve.alarm (Heating valve Alarm)     ▼     Apply     Done

The importer automatically creates the <tagname>.ack tag for you, which is required for alarm acknowledgement.

### Automatic Report Scripting for Imported InTouch Tags using Real-time Text-To-Speech

When you import a tag definition from InTouch, the tag description will be used for the tag report script if none are currently configured for the tag. This allows you to quickly set up SCADAlarm by simply importing tags. The default tag report script will contain the tagname, a description (as configured in InTouch), the alarm state, and acknowledgement instructions. For example:

"SteamValve. Heating valve alarm. IN ALARM. To acknowledge, press 9."

### **Configuring Discrete Alarms for InTouch**

### To configure a discrete alarm

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [4 are defined]	×
Intrusion	
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🔊 On / Off 🔯 Alarm 🐼 Groups	
Alarm / Tag	1
Name Enable Alarm	
Intrusion Value When 1	
Description	
Intrusion Alarm Current	
Value   Name of tag that Ac <u>k</u> nowledges this alarm	
intrusion.ack	
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:	
intrusion.ack	
Type of Connection	
Get data from InTouch	
≤<     New     Delete     >≥     Edit Tag Report Script       Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)     ▼     Apply     Done	
This tag name must be unique.	

3. In the **Name** box, use the alarm tagname exactly as it appears in the InTouch tagname dictionary or use the tagname with an ".alarm" field if you want the ability to enable/disable the alarm from InTouch. For more information, see the *InTouch User's Guide*.

# **Configuring Analog Alarms for InTouch**

### To configure an analog alarm

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [5 are defined]
TankLevel.histatus
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🕥 On / Off 🖏 Alarm 🕼 Groups
Alarm / Tag
Name Enable Alarm
TankLevel.histatus Ualue When 1
Description
Tank HI Level Alarm Current
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm
TankLevel.ack Server <u>I</u> tem
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:     TankLevel.histatus
Turse of Compaction
Get data from InTouch
New Delete _>≥ Edit Tag Report Script
TankLevel.histatus (Tank HI Level Alarm)     Apply     Done

3. In the **Name** box, use the analog base tagname with the desired field (.hihistatus, .histatus, .lostatus, or .lolostatus) appended to the end of the tagname.

When the corresponding threshold (.hihilimit, .hilimit, .lolimit, or .lololimit) is met, the value of the alarm tag will be 1. For example, if the analog base tag is TankLevel, then TankLevel.histatus will have a value of 1 whenever the value of TankLevel exceeds the value of TankLevel.hilimit. For more information, see the *InTouch User's Guide*.

# Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement for InTouch

To set up alarm acknowledgement for InTouch, append the item name with ".ack." For example, if your alarm tagname were named "hialarm," the SCADAlarm acknowledge tag would be "hialarm.ack."

### To configure alarm acknowledgement

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [4 are defined]
Intrusion
📴 Iag 😹 Server 🐧 On / Off 👹 Alam 🕼 Groups
Alarm / Tag
Name Enable Alarm
Intrusion Value when 1 On or In Alarm
Description Not
Intrusion Alarm Current Value
Name of tag that Ac <u>k</u> nowledges this alarm
Server Item
intrusion.ack
Type of Connection
Get data from InTouch
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)
This tag name must be unique.

3. In the **Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm** box, type the alarm tagname with an ".ack" appended to the end of the tagname.

When an alarm is acknowledged from SCADAlarm (either over the telephone or from the SCADAlarm Alarm window), the value for the tag specified by the **Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm** box is set to 1.

4. Click the Server tab.

 Click Acknowledgment Details. The Data Server Acknowledgment dialog box appears.

Data Server Acknowledgment	X
Values to send to the Acknowledge tag	
For Acknowledgment	
1	
Send Ack-tag Reset (only if needed)	
To <u>R</u> eset the Acknowledge tag	
Append Newline characters to these	
Process embedded variables	
Done	

- 6. In the **For Acknowledgment** box, type a 1.
- If you are using InTouch as the HMI, you do not need to select the Append Newline characters to these option. However, the behavior of InTouch will remain the same even if this option is checked.
- 8. Click Done.

# Configuring SCADAlarm to Start When WindowViewer Starts

### To configure SCADAlarm to start when WindowViewer starts

- 1. Start WindowMaker.
- 2. On the Special menu, point to Scripts and then click Application Scripts.
- 3. Select **On Startup** for the type of script.
- 4. Type a line of script similar to the following:

StartApp "(full path to scalrm.exe)";

For example, (using the default path on drive C:):

```
StartApp "C:\Program
Files\Wonderware\SCADAlarm\scalrm.exe";
```

Whatever the operating system, you may want the entire SCADAlarm application to appear as the topmost application on the desktop under certain conditions. If so, add the following command to the button, script, and so on, This should cause the following action:

ActivateApp "SCADAlarm Advanced Telephonic Dialer";
# Using SCADAlarm with Industrial Application Server

In order to use SCADAlarm with Industrial Application Server, you will need to have the Integrated Development Environment (IDE) and bootstrap installed on the SCADAlarm computer and a Platform deployed.

For information on versions of Industrial Application Server that are supported with SCADAlarm, see the FactorySuite Compatibility Matrix that is published on the Wonderware web site (www.wonderware.com).

## Configuring Industrial Application Server as the Data Server

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

#### To configure Industrial Application Server as the data server

- 1. In the Server Name box, specify the server name.
- 2. In the Server Type list, click "Galaxy."
- 3. In the Galaxy Name box, specify the Galaxy name.
- 4. If the Industrial Application Server (Galaxy Repository) is running on a different computer than SCADAlarm, select the **Galaxy Repository node** check box and simply provide the name of the IAS node. To connect to the server, you will need to have the Integrated Development Environment (IDE) installed on the SCADAlarm computer.
- 5. Click Set ArchestrA User. The Login to ArchestrA dialog box appears.

**Note** The **Set ArchestrA User** button will not appear on **Server** tab if the ArchestrA security mode is set to **None**.

Login to ArchestrA - Galaxy based	
User Name:	
Password:	
Domain Name:	
OK Cancel	

6. Specify the account name and logon parameters that will be used by SCADAlarm to connect to the Galaxy for alarm acknowledgements and data writes.

If you provide an invalid account, an error message will appear. If authentication fails at run time, an error message will be generated in the ArchestrA Logger. If authentication succeeds, but the write fails due to the security configuration within the target Galaxy, a Logger error message will be generated.

The account you provide is retained in the SCADAlarm application. Any change to the ArchestrA security settings or user password will require the you to re-enter the user and password in SCADAlarm.

7. Click OK.

For example:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [1 is defined]
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm
📴 Tag 😹 Server 🛐 On / Off 🤯 Alarm 🕼 Groups
Server Name
IAS1  New Server Delete Server
Server
Enable Changes Set ArchestrA User Browse
Enable This Server
Galaxy Repository node Galaxy name
Galaxy1
Server Tube
Galaxy Acknowledgment Details
Selete Selete Select Script

## **Importing Tags from Industrial Application Server**

You can use the SCADAlarm tag importer to browse the list of tags (attributes) in an Industrial Application Server Galaxy (database) and then create alarms in the SCADAlarm database for them. This allows you to quickly and easily create alarm definitions in the SCADAlarm for Industrial Application Server tags.

In order for you to create alarms based on tags from an Industrial Application Server Galaxy, the following requirements must be met:

- The Industrial Application Server Integrated Development Environment (IDE) is installed on the SCADAlarm computer.
- Objects are configured in the ArchestrA Galaxy.

When using the tag importer, you cannot select multiple tags.

#### To import Industrial Application Server tags

- 1. Configure Industrial Application Server as the data server. For more information, see "Configuring Industrial Application Server as the Data Server" on page 181.
- 2. In the Server tab of the Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, click the Browse button. The Attribute Browser dialog box appears.

	Attribute Brow	iser									X
٩	📎 🚼 Eilt	er: Def	fault	<b>•</b> 5	🕜 🔽 Show	all attributes	Show	templates		€	
	Tagname 🔺		Attribute	e 🔺				Data Type	Category		<b></b>
•	AnalogDevice,	_001	🔡 Engin	eFailureAlarm.Ack	æd			Boolean	Calculated		
ę	AppEngine_00	1	🐔 Engin	eFailureAlarm.Ack	Мsg			String	Writeable_U		
6	👌 Area_001		🝈 Engin	eFailureAlarm.Cat	egory			CustomEnum	Writeable_USC_L	ockable	
L C	🗟 WinPlatform_0	001	🔡 Engin	eFailureAlarm.Cor	ndition			Boolean	Calculated		
🐔 EngineFailureAlarm.Desc					String	Calculated					
EngineFailureAlarm. InAlarm					Boolean	Calculated					
🖯 EngineFailureAlarm.Priority					Integer	Writeable_USC_Lockable					
🕒 EngineFailureAlarm.TimeAlarmAcked					Time	Calculated					
🕒 EngineFailureAlarm.TimeAlarmOff					Time	Calculated					
			🕒 Engin	eFailureAlarm.Tim	eAlarmOn			Time	Calculated		
📎 ExecutionRelatedObject					Reference	Writeable_C_Lock	able	<b>–</b>			
	(	•								<u> </u>	
						Property:	<none></none>		▼ OK	Cance	el l
4 Oł	ojects	184 Attri	butes	WinPlatform_00	L.EngineFailure	eAlarm.InAlarm	1				

- 3. Select the Show all attributes check box.
- 4. Use the Attribute Browser to select a tag (attribute) to import into SCADAlarm. You can only import one tag at a time. Select the attribute that contains the ".InAlarm" field.

The Attribute Browser will only display attribute names that are up to 80 characters in length.

For more information on the Attribute Browser, see the Industrial Application Server documentation.

igineFailureAlarm.InAlarm
g if its name already e <u>x</u> ists
) Replace old 🛛 🔿 Rename new

5. Click OK. The Tag Import Filter dialog box appears.

- 6. In the **Tags selected for import from <server name**>window, verify the Industrial Application Server tag (attribute) for which you want to create an alarm in SCADAlarm.
- 7. In the **Discrete Tag and Alarm Data** group, configure the discrete alarm that you want to include in the import for the selected tags.

**Note** All data types imported from Industrial Application Server are assumed to be discrete. (The Attribute Browser does not provide data type information, only the attribute name.) You can change the data type for a tag to numeric by editing the alarm tag definition after the import.

#### Make this an Alarm

Select this check box to have SCADAlarm create an alarm tag for the selected Industrial Application Server tag (attribute).

#### Set to

The alarm priority to use for all discrete alarms.

#### Speak when Off

The name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken by SCADAlarm to describe the "normal" state of the tag. A spoken normal state of "CLEARED" (Z\_CLEAR.wav) is the default.

Double-click or right-click on the box to select or change the voice prompt file. For more information, see "Browsing or Recording a Voice Prompt" on page 136.

#### Speak when On

The name of the prompt (.wav or .txt) that will be spoken by SCADAlarm to describe the "alarm" state of the tag. A spoken alarm state of "IN ALARM" (Z\_ALARM.wav) is the default.

8. In the **Common to All Alarms** group, configure the operator group to associate with the tag.

#### Notify on Clear

If this check box is selected, a notification will be sent to the group when the alarm condition clears or recurs.

#### Notify when Acknowledged

If this check box is selected, a notification will be sent to the group when the alarm has been acknowledged.

#### **Call Group**

Select this check box to specify the name of the group of operators to be called when the tag goes into alarm.

#### Also call

Select this check box to specify the name of an additional group to notify if an alarm occurs. For more information, see "Alarm Notification for an "Also Notify" Operator Group" on page 80.

9. In the **Importing a new tag if its name already exists** group, configure how you want duplicate tags handled.

#### Skip it

If selected, the new alarm tag to import will be skipped.

#### **Replace old**

If selected, the existing alarm tag in the SCADAlarm database will be replaced with the new alarm tag.

#### Rename new

If selected, the new tag will be renamed if the importer encounters a naming conflict. The tooltip shows the naming convention for the renamed tag(s).

10. Click **Import** to import the alarm definitions for the selected tag. The **Import Done** dialog box appears.



- To remove the imported tag from the Tags selected for import from <Server Name> window, click Yes. Otherwise, click No. The Tag Import Filter dialog box will close.
- 12. To import additional tags, repeat steps 2 through 10.
- To close the Tag Import Filter, click Close. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears. The imported tags appear in the list at the bottom of the dialog box.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [1 is d	lefined]
WinPlatform_001.Engi	neFailureAlarm.InAlarm
📴 👖 ag 🔣 Server 🕅 💁 / Off 🦉 /	Alarm 🕼 🕼 Groups
Server Name	
IAS1	New Server     Delete Server
Server	
Enable Changes	Set ArchestrA User Browse
Enable This Server	
Galaxy Repository noda	Gala <u>x</u> y name
	Galaxy1
Server Type	
Galaxy	Acknowledgment Details
	J
Ne <u>w</u> Dela	ete >≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
WinPlatform 001 EngineEailureAlarm InAl	

14. Click Done.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [2 are defined]
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm
📴 Iag 🚮 Server 🐧 On / Off 👸 Alarm 🐼 Groups
Name Enable Alarm
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm         Value When On or In Alarm
Description
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.Acked Server Item
Image: Section 2         WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureA           WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm AckMsg         Image: Section 2
Type of Connection
Get data from IAS1
Delete >≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm (WinPla Apply Done
Turn this tag's action on or off. Datum is still acquired.

15. Click the Tag tab.

The importer automatically creates the <attribute name>.Acked and <attribute name>.AckMsg tags for you, which are required for alarm acknowledgement. For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement for IAS" on page 187.

## **Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement for IAS**

#### To configure alarm acknowledgement

1. On the Maintenance menu, click Alarms / Tag Names. The Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box appears.

2. Click the Tag tab.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [2 are defined]	×
WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm	
📴 Iag 😹 Server 🕅 On / Off 👹 Alarm 🐼 Groups	
Alarm / Tag	]
Name     Value When       WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm     On or In Alarm	
Description         Not           WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm         Current	
Name of tag that Ac <u>k</u> nowledges this alarm WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.Acked	
Image: Server Item         Image: WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.AckMsg         Image: WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.AckMsg	
Type of Connection	
Get data from IAS1	
≤<     New     Delete     >≥     Edit Tag Report Script       WinPlatform_001.EngineFailureAlarm.InAlarm (WinPlat     Apply     Done	
Turn this tag's action on or off. Datum is still acquired.	

3. In the **Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm** box, type the alarm tagname with an ".Acked" appended to the end of the tagname.

When an alarm is acknowledged from SCADAlarm (either over the telephone or from the SCADAlarm Alarm window), the value for the tag specified by the **Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm** box is set to true.

4. Select the **But write to this tag to Acknowledge** check box and in the box, type the alarm tagname with an ".AckMsg" appended to the end of the tagname.

For Industrial Application Server, a string value that is set for the <attribute name>.AckMsg attribute will automatically set the <attribute name>.Acked to true and will thus acknowledge the alarm.

- 5. Click the Server tab.
- 6. Select the **Enable Changes** check box.

7. Click Acknowledgment Details. The Data Server Acknowledgment dialog box appears.

Data Server Acknowledgment	×
Values to send to the Acknowledge tag	
For Ac <u>k</u> nowledgment	
SCADAlarm ack by [0] [T].	
Send Ack-tag Beset (only if needed)	
To Reset the Acknowledge tag	
0	
Append Newline characters to these	
Process embedded variables	
Done	

8. In the **For Acknowledgment** box, type any string message. For example, you could use the following message format, where [O] and [T] are SCADAlarm message variables.

"SCADAlarm ack by [O] [T]."

For more information on message variables, see "Creating a Message Format" on page 108.

- 9. Leave the **Append Newline characters to these** check box unchecked for Industrial Application Server.
- 10. Select the **Process embedded variables** check box to have the current values provided for the message variables at run time.
- 11. Click Done.

# Using SCADAlarm with Ci Technologies Citect®

Information is provided on how to connect SCADAlarm to Citect. It is assumed that you have working knowledge of SCADAlarm and Citect.

**Important!** Testing was performed with SCADAlarm 6.0 and Citect 5.40. This information may not be valid in other versions of the HMI package. Also, results may be different with SCADAlarm patches installed.

## **Configuring Citect as the Data Server**

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

To configure Citect as the data server, use **Citect** as the application name and **Variable** as the topic.

The item name for Citect will be the tagname.

### **Citect DDE Server Startup**

#### To start up the Citect DDE Server

• According to the Citect documentation, you must set the **GENERAL/TagDB** parameter to a value of **1**.

**Note** DDE pokes work only if you have the hardware key installed. Demo mode yields erratic results.

You can configure the HMI to start the DDE Server first and then SCADAlarm.

#### To start SCADAlarm after the DDE Server

- 1. Run the Citect Explorer.
- 2. On the Tools menu, click Computer Setup to access the Citect Computer Setup Wizard.
- 3. Choose Custom Setup.
- 4. Click through the wizard until the **General Options Setup** window appears. Type the following in the **Startup Cicode** function box:

exec ("<full path to SCADAlarm>\SCALRM.EXE",1);

If you specify a value of 1, SCADAlarm will run with the default size window. If you specify a value of 3, SCADAlarm will run maximized. If you specify a value of 6, SCADAlarm will run minimized.

5. Follow the prompts to finish the setup.

### Alarm Acknowledgement for Citect

The Citect documentation indicates that "alarm parameters as tags" are available (for example, .ack, .hi, and so on). The .ack field is specifically mentioned, and its described behavior mimics that of InTouch. In the simulation created for testing purposes, the IntrusionAlarm.ack tag correctly indicates the current "acknowledge state" of the IntrusionAlarm tag; however, writing to this field sometimes does not have any effect.

Within SCADAlarm, verify that the acknowledgement option is set to allow acknowledgements to be sent to and accepted from the HMI (by clicking the **Both** option). For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.

There may be an issue with alarm "categories" or "privileges" that need to be configured. You might also want to set the following SCADAlarm INI entry in the [System Parameters] section:

#### Use Data-type-aware POKE Flag=1

## **Creating a Simulation Project**

The following steps illustrate how to create a Citect project with no real I/O, for simulation purposes.

#### To create a simulation project

- 1. Start Citect Explorer:
- 2. Create a new project.
  - A. On the File menu, click New Project.
  - B. Enter the new project name and accept all defaults.
- 3. Add an I/O Server.
  - A. From the Project List tree view, select the Communications folder.
  - B. Click I/O Servers.
  - C. Enter the server name and click Add.
- 4. Add an I/O device.
  - A. From the Project List tree view, select the Communications folder.
  - B. Click I/O Devices.
  - C. Enter the device name (i.e., MEMORY\_PLC).
  - D. Select the GENERIC protocol and select MEMORY for the Port Name.
  - E. Click Add.
- 5. Draw the screen.
  - A. From the **Project List** tree view, select the pages folder (subfolder for Graphics folder).
  - B. Click Create a new page.

## **Configuring a Variable Tag in Citect**

The following graphic illustrates how a "variable tag" of type real can be defined in Citect:

🛄 Variable Tags [	SA_DEMO]			- II X
Variable Tag Name	TankLevel	Data Type	REAL	-
I/O Device Name	MEMORY 💌	Address	R1	
Raw Zero Scale	0	Raw Full Scale	9999	
Eng Zero Scale	0	Eng Full Scale	9999	
Eng Units	ft 💌	Format	<b>#####</b> .## <b>•</b>	
Comment				
<u>A</u> dd <u>B</u> d	eplace <u>D</u> elete	<u>H</u> elp		
Record: 1			Linked: No	-

The following graphic illustrates how a "variable tag" of type digital can be defined in Citect:

🛄 Variable Tags [	SA_DEMO]		_ 🗆	Ľ
Variable Tag Name	Intrusion	Data Type	DIGITAL	
I/O Device Name	MEMORY	Address	D1	
Raw Zero Scale		Raw Full Scale		
Eng Zero Scale		Eng Full Scale		
Eng Units	<b>_</b>	Format	<b>•</b>	
Comment				
Add <u>R</u> ecord : 3	place <u>D</u> elete	<u>H</u> elp	Linked: No	•

## **Configuring an Alarm Tag in Citect**

Alarm tags are added separately from the "variable tags." The following is a sample digital alarm:

🛄 Digital Al	arms [ SA_DEMO ]	<u>-                                    </u>
Alarm Tag	IntrusionAlarm	<u> </u>
Alarm Name		
Alarm Desc		
Var Tag A	Intrusion 💌 Var Tag B	•
Category	Help	•
Comment		
Add Record: 3	<u>R</u> eplace <u>D</u> elete <u>H</u> elp	•

This alarm, named **IntrusionAlarm**, is active when "Var Tag A" is true. In this case, "Var Tag A" is the Intrusion tag. Note that tag "Intrusion" does not appear in the alarm summary, and it has no "alarm attributes." You must add an alarm (that is, IntrusionAlarm) to use these attributes.

## Configuring a Citect Discrete Tag in SCADAlarm

The following graphic illustrates a Citect discrete alarm tag as defined in SCADAlarm:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [1 is defined]	X
Intrusion	
📴 Iag 🔜 Server 🖱 On / Off 🞇 Alarm 🐼 Groups	
Alarm / Tag	
Name Enable Alarm	
Intrusion Value When 1	
Description	
Current	
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm	
IntrusionAlarm.ack Server Item	
But write to this tag to Acknowledge: IntrusionAlarm.on	
Use Tag Name	
Type of Connection	
Get data from CitectServer	
Intrusion Done	

## **Configuring a Citect Analog Tag in SCADAlarm**

The following graphic illustrates a Citect analog alarm tag as defined in SCADAlarm:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [2 are defined]	x
TankLevel	
📴 Iag 🔜 Server 🕲 On / Off 🞇 Alarm 🐼 Groups	
Alarm / Tag	
Name Value When 1	
Description	
Current	
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm	
TankLevelAlarm.ack	
Server Item	
TankLevelAlarm.HH	
I Use Lag Name	
Type of Connection	
Get data from CitectServer	

## Using SCADAlarm with Intellution® iFIX®

Information is provided on how to connect SCADAlarm to the Intellution® iFIX® Dynamics HMI. It is assumed that you have working knowledge of SCADAlarm and iFIX.

**Important!** Testing was performed with SCADAlarm 6.0 and iFIX 3.5. This information may not be valid in other versions of the HMI package. Also, results may be different with SCADAlarm patches installed.

## Configuring iFIX as the Data Server

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

To configure iFIX as the data server, use **DMDDE** as the application name and **Data** as the topic.

The item name for iFIX will be the tagname.

## **iFIX Startup Options and/or Requirements**

The iFIX DDE Server, which makes database values available for DDE clients, (such as SCADAlarm), must be configured to start when iFIX is started.

#### To configure the DDE Server to start up

- 1. Start the Intellution System Configuration Utility (SCU).
- 2. On the **Configure** menu, click **Tasks**. The Task Configuration window appears.
- 3. Click the "?" at the end of the **Filename** box.
- 4. Browse for the file DMDDE.EXE and select it.
- 5. Click the desired start up mode option.
- 6. Click Add.
- 7. Click OK.

Whenever iFIX is started, DMDDE.EXE (the Intellution DDE Server) will start automatically.

You can configure the HMI to start the DDE Server first and then SCADAlarm.

#### To configure the HMI to start SCADAlarm

- 1. Start the iFIX System Configuration Utility (SCU).
- 2. On the Configure menu, click Tasks.
- 3. In the **Filename** box, find DMDDE.EXE and click **Open**. You should see DMDDE.EXE in the **Filename** box.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Use the UP/DOWN arrow buttons (if necessary) to move DMDDE all the way to the top of the list.
- 6. Repeat steps 1 through 4 for SCALRM.EXE.
- 7. Use the UP/DOWN arrow buttons (if necessary) to move SCALRM.EXE all the way to the bottom of the list.

This ensures that the DDE server (DMDDE.EXE) is started before SCADAlarm.

### Alarm Acknowledgement for iFIX

If you want to acknowledge alarms at the HMI from SCADAlarm, follow these guidelines:

- When adding "blocks" (otherwise known as "tags") to your Intellution database, you must use Digital Alarm (DA) and Analog Alarm (AA) blocks. Use these instead of Digital Input (DI) and Analog Input (AI) blocks, which have no remote acknowledgement capability.
- Unlike InTouch, Intellution blocks do not have a built-in .ack field that allows for easy acknowledgement. You must create a "SIM block discrete" (similar to an InTouch memory discrete tag) for each block that you want to acknowledge remotely. This "ack tag" should be either a Digital Output (DO) or Digital Register (DR) block.
- Within SCADAlarm, verify that the acknowledgement option is set to allow acknowledgements to be sent to and accepted from the HMI (by clicking the **Both** option). For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.
- Within SCADAlarm, in the Acknowledgement Parameters dialog box, select the Send Ack-tag Reset check box. In the To Reset the Acknowledge tag box, type a 0.

## Configuring an Alarm Tag in iFIX

#### To configure an alarm in iFIX

- 1. Start the Intellution Dynamics Workspace.
- 2. Start the Database manager.
- 3. Create a Digital Alarm Block. Configure the options as follows:

#### Tagname

For this example, call this alarm INTRUSION.

#### Device

This option is similar to the **Access Name** box in InTouch. If this alarm is a memory discrete, specify SIM as the device. (SIM is the Simulation Driver device.)

#### I/O Address

When configuring SIM blocks, you must assign a unique address for each. Discretes take the form WORD:BIT.

#### Labels (Open & Close)

The current value of a discrete block is represented by its open/close labels. The DA block will have a value of "OK" when the discrete is Open (0), and a value of "ALARM" when the discrete is Closed (1).

**Note** These are the values that are sent to SCADAlarm and they are case-sensitive.

Digital Alarm - [INTRUSION]
Basic Alarms Advanced
Tag Name :     INTRUSION       Description :        Previous :
Addressing Driver : SIM Simulation Driver I/O Configuration I/O Address : 0:3 Signal Conditioning: Hardware Options:
Scan Settings       Labels         Process By Exception       Open : OK         Scan Time : 1       Occose : ALARM         Phase At :       Close : ALARM
<u>S</u> ave Cancel Help

4. Click on the **Alarms** tab and verify the following fields:

#### ACK Tag

The tag "INTRUSION" will be acknowledged if the acknowledge tag is set to 1 (either from the HMI itself or from an external application, such as SCADAlarm). **Note** The acknowledge tag is typed here without the nodename and the field must be .F\_CV.

Digital Alarm - [TEST]		?×
Basic Alarms Advanced		
<ul> <li>✓ Enable Alarming</li> <li>Alarm Priority</li> <li>○ Low ○ Medium ○ High</li> <li>Alarm Type</li> <li>○ None ○ Change of State</li> <li>○ Open ④ Change</li> </ul>	Alarm Areas	
Options		
ACK Tag: ACK.F_CV	Delay Time : 00:00	
Alarm Suspend :	ReAlarm Time : 00:00	
	<u>S</u> ave Cancel Help	

## Configuring an Acknowledge Tag in iFIX

#### To configure the acknowledge tag

1. Create a "SIM" Digital Output Block and verify the following fields:

#### Tagname

For this example, call this acknowledge tag ACK.

#### Labels (Open & Close)

In order for remote acknowledgement to/from SCADAlarm, the Open and Close Labels for the acknowledge tag(s) must be set to 0 and 1, respectively.

You must use an acknowledge tag for each alarm that you want to acknowledge remotely. You could create a **unique** acknowledge tag for each alarm (effectively doubling the size of your alarm database) or you could use the same acknowledge tag for each alarm in your system (similar to setting \$System.Ack=1 in InTouch).

Digita	al Register -	[ACK]	? ×
Basi	ic Advance	a)	
T	Fag Name :		
0	Description :		
F	Previous :	Next:	▲ …
	Addressing — Driver :	CIM Circulation Drives	UR Configuration
			170 Comgunation
	70 Address :	0:1	
	oignaí Conditioning:	Hardware Options:	▼
Г	Labels		
	Open: 0		
	Close : 1		
		<u>S</u> ave Cancel	Help

2. Click on the **Advanced** tab and verify that the **Enable Output** check box is selected.

## Configuring an iFIX Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm

The following example shows the INTRUSION alarm as it should be configured in SCADAlarm:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [2 are defined]	×			
scalrm:intrusion.a_cv				
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🖪 On / Off 🔯 Alarm 🐼 Groups				
r Alarm / Tag				
Name Enable Alarm				
scalim:intrusion.a_cv Ualue When 1				
Description				
Intrusion Alarm Current				
Value         Value           Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm         Value				
scalrm:ack.a_cv				
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:     scalarmintrusion a. cv				
✓ <u>U</u> se Tag Name				
Type of Connection				
Get data from iFIX				
C New Delete SS Edit Tag Benort Script				
scalrm:intrusion.a_cv (Intrusion Alarm)				

Options are configured as follows:

#### Name

Intellution tags are represented in the following format:

#### NODENAME: TAGNAME. FIELD.

In this example, the Intellution Nodename is "SCALRM," The tagname is "INTRUSION," and the field is "A\_CV." No parts of the alarm tag name are case-sensitive.

#### Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm

The acknowledge tag that was configured was called ACK. The acknowledge tag field must be ".A\_CV."

#### Value When On or In Alarm

For discrete alarms, this must correspond exactly to the desired "label" of the alarm tag (typically the Close label, but it could be the Open label if you choose to invert the tag).

This value is case-sensitive. Remember also that SCADAlarm does not perform "threshold checking" (for example, greater than 30.0). SCADAlarm only knows that a tag is in alarm when the value in the **Current Value** box is exactly equal to the string entered in the **Value** when in alarm box.

If a tag name is configured in SCADAlarm, but it does not exist in iFIX, "junk" characters will be returned for the current value.

### **iFIX VBA Samples**

The following is a sample of pushbutton code:



#### CommandButton1\_Click()

When the button is clicked, a 1 is written to scalrm:ack.a\_cv.

#### CommandButton2\_Click()

When the button is clicked, the value of tag scalrm:test.a cv is toggled.

# Using SCADAlarm with National Instruments® Lookout™

Information is provided on how to connect SCADAlarm to Lookout. It is assumed that you have working knowledge of SCADAlarm and Lookout.

**Important!** Testing was performed with SCADAlarm 5.0, and Lookout 4.01. This information may not be valid in other versions of the HMI package. Also, results may be different with SCADAlarm patches installed. No new testing has occurred after the release of SCADAlarm 5.0. Lookout may work with the current version of SCADAlarm, but it is not officially supported.

## **Configuring Lookout as the Data Server**

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

To configure Lookout as the data server, use **Lookout** as the application name and the process filename as the topic.

The item name for Lookout will be the tagname.

## Lookout Startup Options and/or Requirements

The Lookout DDE Server is started automatically when Lookout is started.

**Note** New tags created in SCADAlarm do not advise unless SCADAlarm is restarted.

You can configure the HMI to start the DDE Server first and then SCADAlarm.

- 1. Start Lookout.
- 2. Go to Edit Mode, by performing either of the following:
  - On the Edit menu, click Edit Mode.
  - On your computer keyboard, click Ctrl+Space.
- 3. On the **Object** menu, click **Create**.
- 4. Select the Control object class.
- 5. Select a Run object.
- 6. Create a new object of the **Run** object class by configuring the following options:

**Tag** Choose a unique tagname. For example, Run.

**Run when =** TRUE

#### Command Line =

"<full path>\scalrm.exe"

(the double-quotes are necessary)

Using the default path as an example:

"c:\Program Files\Wonderware\SCADAlarm\scalrm.exe"

#### To automatically run the Lookout Process file

- 1. On the **Options** menu, click **System**.
- 2. In the Startup Process File box, specify your processfilename.lkp.

## Lookout Alarm Receipt to SCADAlarm

Create an alarm object for each desired SCADAlarm alarm. The Lookout alarm is activated based on the "condition" that you specify during configuration. Lookout alarms can be grouped for acknowledgment.

Lookout alarms are represented in the following format:

TAGNAME.ACTIVE

No parts of the alarm tag name are case-sensitive.

**Note** Lookout seems to append ".active" to the end of alarm tags and makes the resulting tag available to DDE clients. Make sure that the tag definition in SCADAlarm includes the ".active".

### Alarm Acknowledgement for Lookout

Unlike InTouch, Lookout objects do not have a built-in .ack field that allows for easy acknowledgement. If you want to acknowledge alarms at the HMI individually from SCADAlarm, you must create an alarm area for each alarm object in Lookout. If it is acceptable to acknowledge all alarms in the HMI from SCADAlarm at once, just use the default alarm area (Status).

Within SCADAlarm, verify that the acknowledgement option is set to allow acknowledgements to be sent to and accepted from the HMI (by clicking the **Both** option). For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.

## **Configuring a Discrete Alarm Tag in Lookout**

#### To build an alarm in Lookout

- 1. Start Lookout.
- 2. Create an alarm object.
- 3. Configure the options as follows:

#### Tag

For this example, call this alarm Intrusion.

If the Switch object (named Intrusion\_Switch is on, then the alarm is active. This can be an expression, if desired.)

#### Alarm Area

(optional) A unique area here will allow an external application (that is, SCADAlarm) to acknowledge this alarm only. If you do not need to acknowledge alarms at the HMI from SCADAlarm, or if it is acceptable to acknowledge all alarms from SCADAlarm at once, simply use the default, which is "Status."

#### **Logical Alarm**

Select this option for discrete alarming.

For example, if you create an alarm area called **Lookout**, the tag **Intrusion** will be acknowledged if tag **\$Alarm.Lookout.ack** is set to a 1 (either from the HMI itself or from an external application, such as SCADAlarm).

Revise Alarm		×
Name:	Intrusion Alarm area: Lookout	
Message =	"Intrusion Alarm"	
Condition =	Intrusion_Switch	
_ [● Logical ala	arm	
Priority (1-10): 4	file:	<u>B</u> rowse
⊂C <u>N</u> umeric al	larm	Priority:
Hi-Hi le	svel =	
Hile	svel =	
Lo la	svel =	
Lo-Lo le	evel =	
Rate of char	nge =	
Unit	time: (Example: 1:00 fr	or per minute)
Sam	ple =	
	OK Cancel	Help

4. Create a pushbutton object that is used to acknowledge the alarm and verify the following options:

#### Tag

For this example, call this button ack.

Revise pus	shbutton LOGCTRL: 🛛 🗙
Name:	ack
Button text:	Ack Alarms
Verify on =	
Position se	ource
O Local	
	te
URL :=	
	🗖 Latch output
C DDE-	
Service:	
Topic:	
Item	
Control secu	urity level: 0 🗖 Log events
ОК	Cancel Help

## Configuring an Acknowledge Tag in Lookout

In order to acknowledge the alarm via a pushbutton (or remotely) you must create a "connection" between the pushbutton and the desired alarm method:

- 1. On the **Object** menu, click **Edit** Connections.
- 2. Select the \$Alarm object.
- 3. In the Writable members list, select Lookout.ack, then click Select.
- 4. In the Tags list, select ack, then click Paste.
- 5. Click Accept.

\$Alarm is a global object that is available within Lookout by default. The target member for writes is Lookout.ack. Therefore, by creating the connection, clicking on the **ack** pushbutton will assert the \$Alarm.Lookout.ack member.

arm connections					
Select member:					
Writable members:		Existing connection	ons:		Select object
Select					
Alarm.Lookout.ack = New logical connection 0	ack Connection deleted				<u>A</u> ccept Clear
Signals:					
lags:	Pushbutton	Path <u>M</u> ode:	Relative	<u> </u>	
In: 🄀 Universe	-	Contents (reada	ble): logical		
Sustem		S (implicit)			
🖻 🗒 SA_DEMO	_	😽 snapDelay			
🖭 🤬 \$Alarm		😽 value			
offer and a					
наск					
- 🛞 Intrusion					
Intrusion	h				
Intrusion	h				Quit
Intrusion Intrusion_Switcl	h	Paste ack			Quit

# Configuring a Lookout Discrete Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm

The following is the **Intrusion** alarm as it should be configured in SCADAlarm:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [3 are defined]	×
Intrusion.active	
📴 Iag 🔣 Server ष On / Off 👸 Alarm 🕼 Groups	
Alarm / Tag	
Name Enable Alarm	
Intrusion.active Value When 1 On or In Alarm 1	
Description	<u>N</u> ot
Intrusion Alarm Current	
Value I Name of tag that Ac <u>k</u> nowledges this alarm	
ack	
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:	
☑ Use Tag Name	
Type of Connection	
Get data from Lookout	
≤<     New     Delete     >≥     Edit Tag       Intrusion.active (Intrusion Alarm)     ▼     Apply	<u>p R</u> eport Script

#### Name

Lookout alarms are represented in the following format:

#### TAGNAME.ACTIVE

In this example, the Lookout tagname is Intrusion. No parts of the alarm tag name are case-sensitive.

**Note** Lookout appears to append ".active" to the end of alarm tags and makes the resulting tag available to DDE Clients. Make sure that the tag definition in SCADAlarm includes the ".active".

#### Name of the tag that Acknowledges this alarm

This is the pushbutton that was created to ack the alarm from the HMI. When SCADAlarm is acknowledged, ack is set to a 1, which is connected to \$Alarm.Lookout.ack in Lookout.

#### Value When On or In alarm

For discrete alarms, this will be 1 (unless you choose to invert the tag).

**Note** This value is case-sensitive. Remember also that SCADAlarm does not perform "threshold checking" (for example, greater than 30.0). SCADAlarm only knows that a tag is in alarm when the value in the **Current Value** box is exactly equal to the string entered in the **Value** when in alarm box.

## Configuring a Numeric Alarm Tag in Lookout

The following is an example of a numeric alarm as is is configured in Lookout:

<b>Revise Alarm</b>	h i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	×
Name:	LevelAlarm Alarm area: Lookout	
Message =	"Level Alarm"	
Signal =	Level_Pot	
C Logical al	larm -	
Frierity (1-10):	Browse	
• Numeric a	alarm Priority:	
Hi-Hi I	level = HiSetpi+5	
Hil	level = HiSetpt 4	
Lol	level = LoSetpt 4	
Lo-Lo I	level =	
Rate of cha	ange =	
Uni	it time: [Example: 1:00 for per minute]	
Sar	mple =	
	OK Cancel Help	

Options are configured as follows:

#### Signal

The input signal is the TankLevel pot.

#### Hi-Hi level, Hi level, and so on

These setpoints are represented by additional pots.

# Configuring a Lookout Numeric Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm

The following is how the numeric alarm as is is configured in SCADAlarm:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [4 are defined]	×
LevelAlarm.hihi	
📴 Iag) 🔣 Server 🏾 🖲 💁 / Off 👹 Alarm 🖉 🧭	<u>G</u> roups
Alarm / Tag	
Name Enable Alarm	
LevelAlarm.hihi	Value When On or In Alarm 1
Description	<u>⊡ N</u> ot
Tank HI Level Alarm	Current
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm	Value I
LevelAlarmAck	Server Item
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:	LevelAlarm.hihi
	☑ <u>U</u> se Tag Name
Type of Connection	
Get data from Lookout	<u> </u>
-	
	>≥ Edit Tag <u>R</u> eport Script
LevelAlarm bibi (Tank HLLevel Alarm)	

Thresholds are represented by the .hihi, .hi, .lo, and .lolo dot fields.

# Using SCADAlarm with Rockwell® Software RSView®32™

Information is provided on how to connect SCADAlarm to RSView®32<sup>TM</sup>. It is assumed that you have working knowledge of SCADAlarm and RSView32.

**Important!** Testing was performed with SCADAlarm 6.0 and RSView32 6.3. This information may not be valid in other versions of the HMI package. Also, results may be different with SCADAlarm patches installed.

## Configuring RSView32 as the Data Server

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

To configure RSView32 as the data server, use **RTDATA** as the application name and the name of your project as the topic.

The item name for RSView32 will be the tagname.

## **RSView32 Startup Options and/or Requirements**

The RSView32 DDE Server, which makes database values available for DDE clients (such as SCADAlarm), must be configured to start when RSView32 is started.

#### To configure startup

- 1. In the Project window, click the Edit Mode tab.
- 2. Select the System folder, then choose Startup.
- 3. Select the **OPC/DDE Server** check box.

This is the same as setting the DDEServerON /NetDDE macro variable. If you enter this in a macro directly, you must have the /NetDDE flag if you are using this over a network.

- 4. In the **Project Edit** window, select the **Logic and Control** folder, then choose **Macro**.
- 5. Create a macro. The macro should consist of at least the following statement:

#### RTDataWriteEnable

The RTDataWriteEnable statement enables DDE pokes from external applications, such as SCADAlarm

- 6. Go back to the Startup window.
- 7. Select the **Startup Macro** check box and select the macro you just created.

### Alarm Acknowledgement for RSView32

Unlike InTouch, RSView32 does not have a built-in .ack field that allows for easy acknowledgement.

If you want the capability to acknowledge alarms at the HMI individually from SCADAlarm, you must specify a separate tag (bit) that acknowledges the alarm.

The ack bit is a separately defined digital tag in the RSView32 tag database. Click **Auto Reset** to have the ack bit reset upon new occurrence of the alarm. Within SCADAlarm, verify that the acknowledgement option is set to allow acknowledgements to be sent to and accepted from the HMI (by clicking the **Both** option). For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.

SCADAlarm has always poked all data types as a string type; the HMI then translates accordingly. However, RSView32 cannot handle integer, float, or binary values poked as a string. Because of this, SCADAlarm supports the inclusion of the data type as part of the DDE poke method. This feature is disabled by default, and can be activated by modifying the SCADALRM.INI file [System Parameters] section as follows:

Use Data-type-aware POKE Flag=1

## **Configuring an Alarm Tag in RSView32**

RSView32 supports three data types: digital, analog, and string.

You must enable RSView32 alarming. It is not enabled by default.

- 1. In the **Project** window, select the **Edit Mode** tab.
- 2. Select the **System** folder, then choose **Startup**.
- 3. Select the Alarming check box.

The following is a sample digital alarm, called Intrusion:

🖀 Tag Database 📃 🔲 🗙					
Tag					Chose
Name: Intrusion Type: Digital Security: •					
Description: Intrusion	Alarm	۱			Prev
Off Label: Off	_	_	On Label: On		Next
Data Source					New
Type: C De	vice	• м	emory		Help
Initial Value: Off			•		
					Alarm
Search For:	100	Alm	Tag Name	Туре	Description
	1		ack	Digital	
	2		ddestat	Digital	
	3		HiSetpt	Analog	HI Setpoint
- system	4		Integer	Analog	
	5	×	Intrusion	Digital	Intrusion Alarm
	6		OperatorName	String	Logged Operator Name
	7		TankLevel	Analog	Tank Level
211	8		TestBit	Digital	
	9				

4. Click Alarm:

👷 Digital Alarm			×
Alarm States Alarm t	Messages	<u>A</u> dvanced	
Tag: Intrusion			
Alarm Identification:		1	OK
Out of Alarm Label:		1	Cancel
Alarm Acknowledge			Help
Acknowledge Bit: ack			
Auto Reset			
Alarm Handshake Ha <u>n</u> dshake Bit: Auto <u>R</u> eset			

# Configuring an RSView32 Discrete Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm

The following is the **Intrusion** alarm as it should be configured in SCADAlarm:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [1 is defined]			
Intrusion			
📴 Iag 🛃 Server 🕅 On / Off 👸 Alarm 🐼 Groups			
Name Enable Alarm			
Intrusion Un or In Alarm			
Description			
Intrusion Alarm Current			
Value I Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm			
ack Server Item			
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:			
I Use Tag Name			
Type of Connection			
······································			
≤<         New         Delete         >≥         Edit Tag Report Script			
Intrusion (Intrusion Alarm)			

# Using SCADAlarm with Siemens® SIMATIC® WinCC®

Information is provided on how to connect SCADAlarm to WinCC. It is assumed that you have working knowledge of SCADAlarm and WinCC.

**Important!** Testing was performed with SCADAlarm 6.0 and WinCC 6.0. This information may not be valid in other versions of the HMI package. Also, results may be different with SCADAlarm patches installed.

**Note Binary** and **discrete** are used interchangeably throughout this documentation. WinCC refers to binary for discrete.

## Configuring WinCC as the Data Server

For general information on configuring servers, see "Configuring Server Properties for an Alarm Tag" on page 70.

To configure WinCC as the data server, use **WinCC** as the application name and the project name (\\**NodeName\ProjectPath\Scada.MCP**) as the topic.

The item name for WinCC will be the tagname.

For example:

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [3 are defined]				
PumpStop				
📴 Iag 🎎 Server 🛐 On / Off 🤯 Alarm 🐼 Groups				
Server Name				
WinCC	New Server Delete Server			
Server				
Enable Changes				
Enable This Server	Browse			
On other network pode:	Application			
	WinCC			
	Topic			
Server Type	\\Node1\MyProject\Scada.mcp			
DDE	Ackinowledgment Details			
< New Delete	Edit Tag Report Script			
PumpStop (Water Supply Pump Stop)	Apply Done			

## WinCC Startup Options and/or Requirements

You must configure WinCC to auto start the DDE Server (the DDE Server is not started by default).

For information on how to automatically start SCADAlarm using the WinCC and DDE server (WinCC) auto start feature, see the WinCC documentation.

## Alarm Acknowledgement for WinCC

WinCC alarm tag types need an extra tag to use for acknowledgment. This is a binary type of tag. In the WinCC tag database, create one such tag for each alarm that needs to be acknowledged. Be sure each acknowledge tag has a unique I/O address. A single tag can be used for several or all alarm tags if acknowledging alarms by group(s) is desired.

In the SCADAlarm Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box, specify the acknowledge tag in the Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm box.

For example, PumpStop\_Ack can be a separate acknowledge tag for the PumpStop alarm tag. Level\_Ack can be one group acknowledge tag for all the tanks level alarms.

When an alarm is acknowledged from SCADAlarm (either over the telephone or from the SCADAlarm Alarm window), the tag specified in the **Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm** box is set to a 1.

Within SCADAlarm, verify that the acknowledgement option is set to allow acknowledgements to be sent to and accepted from the HMI (by clicking the **Both** option). For more information, see "Configuring Alarm Acknowledgement Parameters" on page 115.

## Configuring an Alarm Tag in WinCC

For information on configuring alarms in WinCC, see the WinCC documentation.

# Configuring a WinCC Discrete Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm

#### To configure a discrete alarm

1. In the **Name** box, use the alarm tag name exactly as it appears in the WinCC Tag database.

For example, if the discrete alarm tag is PumpStop in WinCC, enter PumpStop.
2. In the Value When On or In Alarm box, enter the alarm tag's state as 1 or 0, depending on the alarm condition in the WinCC Tag database.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [2 are defined]
PumpStop
📴 Iag 🔣 Server 🐧 On / Off 🔯 Alarm 🐼 Groups
- Alarm / Tag
Name
PumpStop Value When 1
Description
Water Supply Pump Stop
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm
PumpStop_Ack
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:     PumpSton
V Use Tag Name
Type of Connection
Get data from WinCC
PumpStop (Water Supply Pump Stop)

3. If you want the SCADAlarm tag's naming convention to be different than the WinCC project tags, click to clear the the Use Tag Name check box and use the WinCC tagname only in the Server Item and Name of the tag that Acknowledges this alarm boxes.

If a tag name is configured in SCADAlarm, but it does not exist in WinCC, "junk" characters will be returned for the current value.

# Configuring a WinCC Analog Alarm Tag in SCADAlarm

A separate binary tag is required for each analog base tag.

#### To create an analog alarm

- 1. Create a Internal Binary tag for each analog base tag in the WinCC Tag database. See the WinCC documentation for details on how to create an analog base tag and its alarm tags.
- 2. Start SCADAlarm.

3. In the **Name** box, use the alarm tag name (Internal Binary tag) exactly as it appears in the WinCC tag database. This tag will be set to "1" when the analog base tag threshold (HiHi, Hi, Lo, Lolo) alarm level is met. For example, if the analog base tag is TankLevel, then its alarm tag TankLevelAlarm will have a value of "1" whenever the value of TankLevel exceeds the alarm limits.

Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition [3 are defined]	×
TankLevelAlarm	
📴 Tag 🔣 Server 🖪 On / Off 🦉 Alarm 🐼 Groups	
Name Enable Alarm	
TankLevelAlarm Ualue When 1	-
Description	
Tank level is in alarm state Current	_
Name of tag that Acknowledges this alarm	
Level_Ack Server Item	
But write to this tag to Acknowledge:     TankLevelAlarm	
I Use Tag Name	
Get data from WinCC	
	. 1
Delete >≥ Edit lag <u>Report Scr</u>	.pt
TankLevelAlarm (Tank level is in alarm state)	e

If a tag name is configured in SCADAlarm, but it does not exist in WinCC, "junk" characters will be returned for the current value.

### A P P E N D I X A

# **Quick Reference Information**

This appendix contains information for use by anyone who will be "on call" through the SCADAlarm system.

You may copy any of the information in this quick reference section.

### Contents

- What to Do When You are Called
- Calling into the SCADAlarm System
- Logging in over the Telephone
- What to Expect during a Call

### What to Do When You are Called

#### To handle a call

1. Answer the telephone.

SCADAlarm will announce itself.

2. Follow the prompts to log in, if required.

For more information, see "Logging in over the Telephone" on page 220.

Because the hardware is detecting that the telephone has been answered, there may be a slight delay (up to six seconds). Please stay on the line.

## Calling into the SCADAlarm System

#### To call in

1. Call the SCADAlarm telephone number.

SCADAlarm will answer the telephone and then announce itself.

2. Follow the prompts to log in, if required.

For more information, see "Logging in over the Telephone" on page 220.

3. Since SCADAlarm uses its modem for local annunciation, recording new files, playing files, calling another operator or pager, and so on, you may get a busy signal. Please call back after a brief delay.

## Logging in over the Telephone

#### To log in over the telephone

- 1. When SCADAlarm prompts "Please enter your three-digit operator ID code," use your phone's Touch-tone<sup>®</sup> keys to enter the three-digit code you were given by the SCADAlarm system administrator.
- 2. When prompted to "Please enter your four-digit PIN number," enter the four-digit code you were given by the system administrator.
- 3. The system will either respond with a greeting or fail to recognize you and start the login process over again.
- 4. If the login is successful, a list of options will be spoken. These options may be proceeded by a welcome greeting such as "Accepted!" and/or "There are unacknowledged alarms." You are allowed three chances to successfully log in.

My Operator ID: My PIN Number:		
SCADAlarm Telep	hone Number:	

## What to Expect during a Call

Whether you are calling in to SCADAlarm or being called by SCADAlarm, the sequence of the "conversation" is the same.

- 1. SCADAlarm will announce itself with "This is the SCADAlarm. Please enter your operator ID code."
- 2. Log in to the system, if required.

For more information, see "Logging in over the Telephone."

- 3. When you are recognized, you will hear either "Hello, <your name>" or "Accepted!" If you were called (because of an alarm or if you happened to call while there is an unacknowledged alarm), you will hear "There are unacknowledged alarms."
- 4. You will hear a list of options. You will hear each option followed by the Touch-tone<sup>®</sup> key. For example, "To hear active alarms, press one."

**Note** Remember that the 0 key on your telephone will indicate to the system that you want to hang up if you are at the main (top) menu, or it will return to the main menu from any other menu; therefore, the 0 key will navigate out of the telephone call.

- 5. If you are making a change to a number (such as a set-point), remember that there are safeguards against entering an erroneous value:
  - A. The current value is spoken.
  - B. You enter the new value, using the star (\*) key for a decimal point, and the pound (#) key to terminate the number.
  - C. The number you just entered is read back to you with the usual confirmation request "If this is OK, press 9. To go back, press 6." *before* it is passed on to the SCADA system.
- 6. In order for SCADAlarm to consider its job complete, all alarms must be acknowledged. If the call fails or is terminated prematurely, the system will go on to the next phone number on the on-call list. If you hang up before all alarms are acknowledged, the following warning will be spoken "There are unacknowledged alarms. If this is OK, press 9. To go back, press 6." Either way, SCADAlarm will notify you of its acceptance of your hang-up request, announce the time of day, and say "Goodbye!"
- 7. Finish the conversation with SCADAlarm by logging out. Press 0 before you hang up.

All telephone, pager, and e-mail activity is recorded in the event log.

Appendix A

### A P P E N D I X B

# Voice Prompt Script Templates

Use the following script templates for your menu voice prompts.

### Contents

- Top Menu Voice Prompt File Script
- Menu Voice Prompt File Script
- Alarm, Tagname, and Miscellaneous Voice Prompt Scripts

# **Top Menu Voice Prompt File Script**

Menu Name: Top Menu rev\_\_\_\_\_ by\_\_\_\_\_

Menu File: \_\_\_\_\_.wav

Speech:

 press	I
 press	2
 press	3
 press	4
 press	5
 press	6
 press	7
 press	8
 press	9
 press	*
 press	#

To hang up, press 0.

Always work from a written script when recording, no matter how simple the message.

(This page may be copied)

## Menu Voice Prompt File Script

Menu Name: \_\_\_\_\_ rev\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ Menu File: \_\_\_\_\_\_.wav

Speech:

 press	1
 press	2
 press	3
 press	4
 press	5
 press	6
 press	7
 press	8
 press	9
 press	*
 press	#

To return to the TOP MENU, press 0.

Always work from a written script when recording, no matter how simple the message.

(This page may be copied)

# Alarm, Tagname, and Miscellaneous Voice Prompt Scripts

Filonomo	WOV	
r nename:	wav	
Tagname:	1	oy
Speech:		
[		
Filename:	wav	
Tagname:	1	oy
Speech:		
Filename:	wav	
Operator:		by
Speech:		
Filename:	wav	
On-Call Group:		by
Speech:		
l		

Always work from a written script when recording, no matter how simple the message.

(This page may be copied)

### A P P E N D I X C

# **System Information**

For your reference, information regarding SCADAlarm registry entries, parameters in the SCADAlarm.ini file, system file naming conventions, and the contents of the system voice prompt files is provided.

### Contents

- Registry Entries
- SCADALRM.ini File
- System File Naming Conventions
- System Prompt File Contents

# **Registry Entries**

The SCADAlarm registry key appears in the following location:

#### $HKEY\_Local\_Machine\Software\Wonderware\SCADAlarm$

Sub-keys are described in the following table. These values may be Boolean (0 or 1), string, integer, or "special format" (where noted). Most are set from within SCADAlarm.

Кеу	Data Type	Default	Comments
Application Directory	string	Set by installer.	This value is set by the SCADAlarm installation program and points to the SCADAlarm data files.
VConvert Last Dir	string	Same as the <b>Application Directory</b> key value.	VConvert.exe maintains this.

# SCADALRM.ini File

The SCADAlrm.ini file is located in the directory specified by the **Application Directory** registry value. Not all of these defaults are present on first installation; some defaults are set on starting SCADAlarm for the first time.

Values may be *Boolean* (0 or 1), *string*, *integer*, *or "special format" (where noted)*. Most are set from within SCADAlarm.

# **System Parameters**

The system parameters are described in the following table:

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
DDF. Server Name	string	VIFW	
DDE Tonic Name	string	TAGNAME	
Logging Fnable Flag	Boolean	1	
Log To Printer Flog	Boolean	0	
Drinter Port Name	string		
Logging Door Filonomo	string	CADAlarma Loofilo tut	Driver to version 5.0 this
Logging dase r nename	sung	SCADAiann Logine.txt	parameter was named Logging Filename.
Include Date in Logging Filename Flag	Boolean	0	
Acknowledgement Window Always-on-top Flag	Boolean	0	
Never Show Acknowledgement Window Flag	Boolean	0	
Acknowledgement Window Enable Color Flag	Boolean	1	
Main Window Left Margin	integer		(used internally)
Main Window Top Margin	integer		(used internally)
Ack. Window Left Margin	integer		(used internally)
Ack. Window Top Margin	integer		(used internally)
Ack. Window Width	integer		(used internally)
Ack. Window Height	integer		(used internally)
Send Acknowledgments to SCADA Flag	Boolean	1	
Get Acknowledgments from SCADA Flag	Boolean	1	
This computer telephone number	string	Set by installer	Used in message formats for the [S] variable.
Pager Service Access Number	string		(used internally)
Alphanumeric Pager Service Maximum Length	integer	80	
Numeric-only Pager Service Maximum Length	integer	30	

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Maximum number of alarms in one pager session	integer	5	
Maximum number of alarms in one eMail message	integer	1000	
Maximum Log File Size (kbytes)	integer	4096	
Maximum Log File Size is Limited Flag	Boolean	0	
Delayed-Answer Ring Number	integer	5	
Local Annunciation Repeat Interval (sec)	integer	90	
Group ID (name) for System Test	string	0 (Backup)	This is a special format. The leading integer is the group's internal ID number, which is parsed by SCADAlarm, and the name in parentheses is included for readability.
Group ID (name) for email Reports	string	0 (Backup)	This is a special format. The leading integer is the group's internal ID number, which is parsed by SCADAlarm, and the name in parentheses is included for readability.
Time span of email Reports (hours)	integer(0-24)	24	
Include my-number in voice pages Flag	Boolean	1	
Numeric page format for system test	string	[S]	
Alphanumeric page format for system test	string	Hello, [O], SCADAlarm is working for you ([T])!	
eMail System Enabled Flag	Boolean	0	
eMail CC account on all outgoing Flag	Boolean	1	
eMail account login name	string	mylogin	
eMail account eMail address	string	me@proxyemail.com	
eMail SMTP server name	string	mail.proxyemail.com	
Selected Text-to-speech Voice	string	Microsoft Mike	
Enable Text-to-speech Flag	Boolean	1	

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Selected Text-to-speech Speaking Rate	Boolean	0	
Enable remote hangup (on- hook) detection (if hardware supports it) Flag	Boolean	1	
Display Tool Tips Flag	Boolean	1	
Display Tool Bar Flag	Boolean	1	
Display Status Bar Flag	Boolean	1	
Minimize on logout Flag	Boolean	0	
Minimize on startup Flag	Boolean	0	
Last Operator Edit Mode Flag	Boolean		(used internally)
Use Data-type-aware POKE Flag	Boolean	0	

The following entries may be added or edited only directly (for example, using Notepad) before starting SCADAlarm:

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
eMail SMTP port	integer	25	For all practical purposes, the value must be 25, which designates the standard SMTP port.
eMail forma includes timestamp Flag	Boolean	1	Set this value to 0 if you do not want time of the alarm occurrence, clear, and acknowledgment to be included in an e-mail message.
eMail connection test interval (Sec)	integer	(not present) 10	The time, in seconds, between tests for the e-mail host.
eMail connection timeout (mS)	integer	(not present) 6000	The time, in milliseconds, to connect to the e-mail server.
Dialer delay after first alarm (seconds)	integer	5	A delay to ensure that the local annunciation is started first.
Include Tag Description in Logfile Flag	Boolean	0	When this is set to 1, SCADAlarm will place the description field in the log file wherever a tagname appears.
No. of consecutive bad logins for hacker detection	integer	10	This is used for the Bad Login data type.
Logging watchdog test interval (minutes)	integer	0	When this is a non-zero value, SCADAlarm will log a message every <i>N</i> minutes indicating that it is still running. To disable the logging, set this value to 0.

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Log All Local Annun Scripts Flag	Boolean	0	When this is set to 1, SCADAlarm will log each alarm name as it is annunciated.
Suppress audition-box Flag	Boolean	0	When this is set to 1, SCADAlarm will accept a .wav file selection without offering to play it.
DDE/SuiteLink Network Test Timeout (ms)	integer	not present	
Disable Permanent Debug Mode	Boolean	not present	This is a flag used in debugging that has no effect on released versions.
Suppress confirmation in get- value sequence	string	not present	This enables suppression of the confirmation before sending a DTMF-entered numeric entry on to the data server. In order to work, this MUST be set to: Invensys Systems, Inc. Will NOT Be Liable Note that this mode of operation is not recommended by Wonderware and use of it may result in an operator not being aware of his or her numeric-entry error. You must update the entry if it reflects either of these settings: Fluid Solutions, Inc. Will NOT Be Liable Wonderware Corporation Will NOT Be Liable
Schedule change requires admin Flag	Boolean	0	When this is set to 1, SCADAlarm will restrict all operator on-call preference changes to administrators.
Show Driver Debug and System Status at Startup Flag	Boolean		
Show time in MS instead of date in logfile Flag	Boolean		
Pager System Access Password	string		

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Prefix to Alpha Page to Also- notify Groups	string		Used to change the "Note-only" statement at the beginning of an alphanumeric page or e-mail message to the "also notify" group.
Number of rightmost characters for CPID match	integer		When automatic and restricted logins are used, the CPID is delivered with the area code, which will not match a local number. Also, a long distance number will begin with "1-," which will not match the CPID information. For numbers in the United Status, use 7 for a local number match, and 10 for an area code match. Non-DTMF characters are ignored and not counted; "1" counts as only one digit.

# **Telephone Driver Parameters**

The telephone parameters are described in the following table:

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Telephone I/O Port Name	integer		Set by installer.
<b>Telephone Driver Maximum</b> <b>Recording Time (sec)</b>	integer	30	
Line Test Telephone Number	string		Set by installer. This is used for the telephone line test, expecting a <b>busy</b> CP signal.
Line Test Frequency (minutes; 0 to disable)	integer	0	
TAPI Local Annunciation Device ID	integer		Internal use only.
TAPI Outgoing IVR Device ID	integer		Internal use only.
TAPI Incoming IVR Device ID	integer		Internal use only.
TAPI Numeric Pager Device ID	integer		Internal use only.
TAPI Alphanumeric Pager Device ID	integer		Internal use only.

232

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
No. of NO DIALTONE for failed-phone-line detection	integer	5	
Telephone Driver Inactivity Timeout (sec)	integer	120	
Telephone File Path Name	string	\ <application directory&gt;\VoxFiles</application 	Set by installer
Phone Interface Options Bitmap	string	00000002	
Local Speaker Volume	integer(0-255)	not present	
Pager Service Comm (RateParityBits)	string	33600e7	<ul> <li>This is a special format.</li> <li>The first number is the maximum bit rate, the letter is the parity setting, and the last number is the data bits per word.</li> <li>Currently, acceptable values are:</li> <li>300, 1200, or 33600 bps</li> <li>e, o, or n parity</li> <li>7 or 8 data bits</li> <li>Typical values also include 300n8 or 1200n8. Note that modems can typically autobaud to 300 bps, but the modulation style remains V.90, instead of Bell 303 (300 bps). Therefore, the bps settings of 1200 and 300 actually select the appropriate modulation style, and the 33600 setting allows any negotiable bit rate that can use V.90 modulation.</li> </ul>
Line Test Timeout (sec)	integer	15	
Load Onscreen Demomode DLL Flag	Boolean	0	
TAPI Incoming IVR RIFF Format	string	8000,16,1	Set to 8000,8,1 for Dialogic cards.
TAPI Outgoing IVR RIFF Format	string	8000,16,1	Set to 8000,8,1 for Dialogic cards.

The following telephone driver parameters may be added or edited only directly (for example, using Notepad) before starting SCADAlarm:

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
TAPI Local Annunciation IVR RIFF Format	string	8000,16,1	Set to 8000,8,1 for Dialogic cards.
TAPI Outgoing IVR Device Phone Number	string		By default, the system phone line test number is used.
TAPI Incoming IVR Device Phone Number	string		By default, the system phone line test number is used.
TAPI Numeric Pager Device Phone Number	string		By default, the system phone line test number is used.
TAPI Alphanumeric Pager Device Phone Number	string		By default, the system phone line test number is used.
Audio Buffer Size (1024- 32768 bytes)	integer	8192	If skips in audio are experienced, increase this value. If the audio takes too long to stop after pressing a DTMF key, decrease this value.
Log Driver Debug Window to File Flag	Boolean	0	Set to 1 to have the contents of the debug window written to the log file, "voxdrv.txt."

# **Telephone Parameters**

The telephone parameters are described in the following table:

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Retry Delay (sec)	integer	30	
Retry Limit	integer	2	
Max No. of unanswered prompt repeats	integer	3	
Pager Acknowledgment Delay (minutes)	integer	15	
eMail Acknowledgment Delay (minutes)	integer	15	

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Allow Asterisk In Numeric Pages Flag	Boolean	1	
Alphanumeric Pager Protocol	string	0 (TAP Protocol)	This is a special format. The leading integer is the format number, which is parsed by SCADAlarm, and the name in parentheses is included for readability. Currently, acceptable values are: 0 (TAP Protocol) 1 (UCP Protocol)

The following telephone parameters may be added or edited only directly (for example, using Notepad) before starting SCADAlarm:

Parameter	Data Type	Default	Comments
Phone Login Attempts Allowed	integer	3	

# **System File Naming Conventions**

SCADAlarm uses the following file name conventions.

File Name	File Function
SCALRM.EXE	This is SCADAlarm
VOXDRV32.DLL	Hardware function state machinery
VOXAPI32.DLL	Low-level driver support
SFCVTL32.DLL	File format conversion
SWWB.DLL	Wonderware Attribute Browser support
SWWTE.DLL	Text-to-speech support
WWSALIC.DLL	Wonderware license support wrapper
SCADALRM.INI	Parameter file
*.wav	Recorded voice (prompt) files
A_*.wav, B_*.wav, C_*.wav	Menu prompts for administrator-only, non-administrator, and both (common)
O_*.wav	Operator greeting
T_*.wav	Tagname and units. For example, "The tank level is"
Z_*.wav	System prompt files
VOXFILES\\$S!A?????.wav, VOXFILES\\$S!A?????.txt	Temporary files used by text-to-speech. These files may be deleted at any time. They are normally deleted automatically.

File Name	File Function
*.CAR	System files (operator, tag database, tag report scripts, servers, menu tree, operator schedules)
*.CSK	Control schedule files

# System Prompt File Contents

These files are required for SCADAlarm to function properly. Changing their contents may result in improper operation.

Filename	Contents
Z_TOP1.wav	Top Menu: To hear active alarms, press 1; to hear unacknowledged alarms, press 2; to acknowledge all alarms, press 3; to hang up, press 0.
Z_ACCPT.wav	Accepted.
Z_ACKED.wav	Alarm has been acknowledged.
Z_ACKQ.wav	To acknowledge, press nine. To continue without acknowledging, press six.
Z_ACKQ0.wav	To acknowledge, press nine. To continue, press six.
Z_ALARM.wav	In alarm.
Z_BYE.wav	Goodbye.
Z_BYE1.wav	Goodbye.
Z_CANCL.wav	Cancelled.
Z_CLEAR.wav	Cleared.
Z_EMPTY.wav	This list is empty.
Z_ISOKQ.wav	If this is OK, press nine. To go back, press six.
Z_NUVAL.wav	Enter a new value. For the decimal point, press the star (*) key. To terminate your entry, press the pound (#) key. To cancel this function, press the pound key only.
Z_NVVER.wav	The new value has been sent to the system. Please verify that the new value you have entered has been accepted correctly.
Z_OP_AC.wav	Please enter your 4-digit PIN number.
Z_OP_AC0.wav	Please enter your PIN number.
Z_OP_ID.wav	Please enter your 3-digit operator ID code.
Z_OP_ID0.wav	Please enter your operator ID code.
Z_SYS_ID.wav	This is SCADAlarm.
Z_EMARQ.wav	The e-mail request has been processed.
Z_EMACAN.wav	The e-mail request has been cancelled.

Filename	Contents
Z_ONCALL.wav	You are now on-call.
Z_THX.wav	Thank you.
Z_THX1.wav	Thank you.
Z_UNACK.wav	There are unacknowledged alarms.
Z_AM.wav	A.M.
Z_PM.wav	P.M.
Z_JAN.wav	January
Z_FEB.wav	February
Z_MAR.wav	March
Z_APR.wav	April
Z_MAY.wav	May
Z_JUN.wav	June
Z_JUL.wav	July
Z_AUG.wav	August
Z_SEP.wav	September
Z_OCT.wav	October
Z_NOV.wav	November
Z_DEC.wav	December
Z_SUN.wav	Sunday
Z_MON.wav	Monday
Z_TUE.wav	Tuesday
Z_WED.wav	Wednesday
Z_THU.wav	Thursday
Z_FRI.wav	Friday
Z_SAT.wav	Saturday
Z_0.wav	Zero
Z_1.wav	One
Z_2.wav	Two
Z_3.wav	Three
Z_4.wav	Four
Z_5.wav	Five
Z_6.wav	Six
Z_7.wav	Seven
Z_8.wav	Eight
Z_9.wav	Nine
Z_10.wav	Ten
Z_11.wav	Eleven
Z_12.wav	Twelve
Z_13.wav	Thirteen

Filename	Contents
Z 14.wav	Fourteen
Z 15.wav	Fifteen
 Z 16.wav	Sixteen
 Z_17.wav	Seventeen
Z_18.wav	Eighteen
Z_19.wav	Nineteen
Z_20.wav	Twenty
Z_30.wav	Thirty
Z_40.wav	Forty
Z_50.wav	Fifty
Z_60.wav	Sixty
Z_70.wav	Seventy
Z_80.wav	Eighty
Z_90.wav	Ninety
Z_100.wav	Hundred
Z_1E3.wav	Thousand
Z_1E6.wav	Million
Z_1E9.wav	Billion
Z_1E12.wav	Trillion
Z_POINT.wav	Point
Z_MINUS.wav	Minus
Z_NUMOV.wav	This number is too large to say.
Z_OCLCK.wav	O'clock
Z_PAUSE.wav	[500 milliseconds of silence]

# Glossary

access number	
	The telephone number that SCADAlarm calls to access the alphanumeric paging service modem.
acknowledgement	
	The action of recording the fact that the computer has notified a person about an issue, and that person is now responsible for dealing with the issue.
acknowledged alarm	
	An alarm whose "condition" has been acknowledged, either from the SCADAlarm software, over the telephone, or from the HMI system. Once an alarm has been acknowledged, SCADAlarm will no longer attempt to notify an operator about the alarm. An alarm's acknowledge state is independent of its active state.
active alarm	
	An alarm whose alarm "condition" is currently active. For example, if a tank level is currently above its high level set-point, the HIGH ALARM is active. An alarm's active state is independent of its acknowledge state.
alphanumeric	
	A pager capable of displaying both alphabetic and numeric characters. Cellular phones, especially GSM and PCI phones, usually have this capability.
also-notify group	
	The group of operators that will receive a one-time "notification" in the event of an alarm. SCADAlarm will call the first available phone number for each operator in the group. No acknowledgements are required.
call group	
	The group of operators that are called in the event of an alarm. SCADAlarm will call operators in the order they appear in the list (and based upon operator availability) until the alarm is acknowledged.
Call Progress (CP)	
	These signals are provided by the telephone company to give an indication to the caller of the success or failure of various phases of a telephone call. Examples include dial tone, ringback, and busy signals.

Calling Party Identi	fication (CPID)
	The process by which the identity of the call origination station is made known to SCADAlarm by the telephone company equipment. Also known as "caller ID."
Coder-decoder (Cod	lec)
	A bi-directional data-stream translator subroutine that typically runs on demand in real time; usually used in audio and video applications. This type of functionality is vital to a modem's successful voice operation with TAPI and SCADAlarm.
contact method	
	The device or "method" that SCADAlarm uses to contact an operator. SCADAlarm supports the following devices as contact methods: voice telephones, numeric pagers, alphanumeric pagers, voice pagers, and e-mail. Each operator may have up to four configured contact methods.
control schedule	
	The system-wide functionality schedule for SCADAlarm. The schedule can be configured to enable/disable calling methods, local annunciation, system tests, and alarm delays based upon time of day and day of week.
Dynamic Data Exch	ange (DDE)
	The mechanism built into the Windows operating system that is used by SCADAlarm to query the HMI/SCADA system for data. Its addressing scheme consists of three components: application, topic, and item.
DDE Server	
	The application that provides DDE data to the DDE Client.
DDE Client	
	The application that requests DDE data from the server.
Dual Tone Multi Fro	equency (DTMF)
	A system of signaling using two out of eight audio frequencies to represent sixteen different numerals, letters and symbols (0-9, A-D, *, #). Commonly known by the trade name Touch Tone®.
Global System for N	Aobile Communications (GSM)
	1. The European cell phone and paging standard in use since 1981. In the United States, PCS is an adaptation of this standard. 2. A form of sound data compression (typically GSM 7.21) used in some voice modems and cell phones.
Graphical User Inte	erface (GUI)
	The SCADAlarm program used at the computer console for configuration and status monitoring. See also TUI.

Human-Machine Interface (HMI)			
	The software and hardware system that provides an interface to a machine system. See also SCADA.		
ID code			
	A unique three-digit ID number that identifies each operator in the SCADAlarm system. This number is automatically assigned when the operator profile is added to the system. The operator provides the ID code during the login process over the telephone or when using the SCADAlarm application.		
Interactive Voice Re	sponse (IVR)		
	A telephony technology that enables a system, such as SCADAlarm to accept user input in response to audible prompts.		
item			
	The third component of the name of a DDE conversation. Used to specify the name of a specific datum supported by the server.		
line			
	The TAPI term for a communications channel.		
Message Exchange (	MX)		
	A protocol used by Industrial Application Server for communication between platforms.		
operator			
	A person that SCADAlarm will attempt to notify if an alarm condition occurs.		
pager ID			
	The ID that uniquely identifies an alphanumeric pager. After connecting with the alphanumeric paging service (via the pager access number), SCADAlarm sends this code to identify the recipient of the pager message.		
Personal Identificati	on Number (PIN)		
	A four-digit number used in conjunction with the operator ID code during the login process at the computer console or over the telephone.		
prompt			
	A signal from a computer to a human that it is ready for input. See also voice prompt.		
Private Automatic Branch eXchange (PABX)			
	On-site equipment that mimics the telephone company's operation within an organization by providing inbound call routing and internal signaling. Many models have TAPI implementations.		

#### Pulse Code Modulation (PCM)

A data format whereby the input is coded into discrete linear numeric representations of the instantaneous signal amplitude. This is the standard uncompressed format used in Windows .wav files. See also sampling.

#### RJ-11

A wiring designation with 4- or 6-wire modular connectors; commonly used for standard telephone lines.

#### **Resource Interchange File Format (RIFF)**

The general class of sound and video files, of which the Windows .wav sound format is an example.

#### Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA)

A variant on human-machine interface software and its supporting network.

#### Short Message Peer to Peer Protocol (SMPP)

An input protocol to GSM paging systems, using TCP/IP or X.25 networks instead of serial lines; comparable in function to TAP and UCP.

#### Short Messaging System (SMS)

A standard format used to send short text messages to mobile devices. SCADAlarm complies with ETSI document GSM 03.39, version 6.0 and supports Message Type 30 (the SMS message transfer operation).

#### Speech Application Programming Interface (SAPI)

The set of operating system function calls that present a standard programming methodology to implement text-to-speech and speech recognition functions.

SuiteLink
-----------

A Wonderware protocol based on TCP/IP. SuiteLink is designed specifically to meet industrial needs, such as data integrity, high-throughput, and easier diagnostics. This protocol standard is only supported on Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 or higher.

#### tagname

A unique name that identifies each data point in the system. Typically the same as the item name, but can be different, if desired.

#### Telco

An abbreviation for telephone company.

#### **Telephony Application Programming Interface (TAPI)**

The set of operating system function calls that present a standard programming methodology to implement an IVR application. Several current implementations coexist in various versions of the Windows operating system.

242

#### **Telephony Service Provider (TSP)**

This is the "driver" that the TAPI system uses for a particular piece of hardware, usually provided by the manufacturer. See also Unimodem V.

#### **Telephony User Interface (TUI)**

The audible user interface presented by an IVR system. See also GUI.

#### **Telocator Alphanumeric Protocol (TAP)**

A standard interface protocol used to authorize and identify the recipient and contents of an alphanumeric pager message to the service provider's paging terminal. TAP is usually associated with FLEX® and Post Office Code Standardization Advisory Group (POCSAG) pager systems, but there are some GSM implementations that use this input protocol as well. SCADAlarm implements the TAP Committee specification TAP version 1.8 February 4, 1997. TAP is one of the two major pager system access protocols in use worldwide. Sometimes referred to as the IXO protocol. Not to be confused with TAPI. See also UCP.

#### text-to-speech (TTS)

A set of techniques to translate typed text into phonemes that can be understood by a human listener. Also referred to as speech synthesis.

#### topic

The second component of the name of the DDE conversation; usually specifies a grouping of similar types of items supported by the server.

#### **Universal Computer Protocol (UCP)**

A standard interface protocol used to authorize and identify the recipient and contents of an alphanumeric pager message to the service provider's paging terminal. UCP is one of the two primary pager protocols and is usually used for access to the GSM paging networks used primarily in Europe. SCADAlarm implements European Technical Standard TR 101 632 V6.0.0 (1999-04), GSM 03.39 version 6.0.0 Release 1997. See also TAP.

#### Unimodem V

The generic voice modem TSP provided by Microsoft. Voice modems may be shipped with a modems.inf file that describes specific commands and expected results for each function Unimodem supports. It is not available on all Windows operating systems.

#### voice prompt

A file used by SCADAlarm, containing speech, to convey status information and request input (menus, acknowledgements, and set-point changes) from a caller.

#### Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)

A protocol used to establish and maintain real-time full-duplex audio streams over a network; frequently implemented as a TSP.

244	Glossary
-----	----------

# Index

### Symbols

"also notify" group defined 239 .csv file 96 .ini file 227 .wav files 135

### A

access number 53 defined 239 acknowledged alarm defined 239 acknowledgement defined 239 Acknowledgement Parameters dialog box 197 active alarm defined 239 Add/Remove Hardware Wizard dialog box 36 Alarm / Tag Data Point Definition dialog box 42, 66, 67, 68, 71, 72, 75, 77, 79, 82, 83, 84, 86, 87, 88, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 96, 117, 132, 165, 171, 175, 176, 177, 178, 183, 186, 187, 216 alarm acknowledgement 65, 72, 78, 95 "also notify" group 80 about 114 alarm tag example 90 and HMIs 116 configuring parameters 115 for Citect 190 for iFIX 196 for Industrial Application Server 187 for InTouch 178 for Lookout 204 for RSView32 211 for WinCC 216 message variable 109 performing 114 remote 115 reset tag 73 tag 69 via menu trees 124 alarm acknowledgements notification 80, 174, 185 alarm acknowledgment message variable 109 reset tag 73 tag 69 alarm detection delay 78, 95 alarm notification 80 overview 16 alarm priority 78, 96 alarm reporting 97 alarm tag description 75 message variable 109 alarm tags adding 66 alarm properties 77 configuration examples

"acknowledge all" alarm tag 90 "logged caller" alarm tag 93 about 85 annunciated or dial-out alarm tag 85 bad logins alarm tag 93 dead phone line alarm tag 91 disable SCADAlarm alarm tag 91 e-mail server alarm tag 92 information-only alarm tag 87, 88 server status alarm tag 89 configuring for HMIs Citect 194, 195 iFIX 201 InTouch 176, 177 Lookout 208, 210 RSView32 214 WinCC 216, 217 connection types 65 deleting 83 editing 94 features 13 general properties 68 importing 66 importing from Industrial Application Server 182 importing from InTouch 168 numeric properties 81 on/off properties 75 operator groups 79 server properties 70 testing 84 alarm window 116 alarms delay 132 alphanumeric defined 239 alphanumeric pager ID 53 alphanumeric paging about 30 alarm description 75 baud rate 40 character limit 33 hardware device 146 message format 110 answer detection 146, 163 answering machines 32 answering service 32 application 72 Attribute Browser dialog box 183 attributes 182 authentication for operators 47 Industrial Application Server 182

### В

backup group 60 backups 147, 148 balloon help 22 baud rates 29, 40 blind dialing 53

#### С

cable 34 call group defined 239 call progress defined 239 calling See voice calling calling party identification 48 defined 240 calling preferences 55 about 55 configuring 55 example 57 channels 135, 144 Citect alarm acknowledgement 190 configuring alarm tags 192 configuring as server 189 configuring variable tags 192 DDE Server startup 190 setting up a project 191 using with SCADAlarm 189 coder-decoder defined 240 concepts 14 configuration overview 23 connection types 65 contact methods See also notification methods comments for operators 52 configuring for operators 52 defined 240 Control Schedule dialog box 130, 131, 133, 152, 162 control schedules about 129 adding an entry 131 configuring holidays 133 creating 130 creating a schedule file 131 defined 240 deleting a schedule file 131 deleting an entry 131 schedule types 132

### D

data files conversion 17 Data Server Acknowledgment dialog box 73, 180, 189 days off 57 DDE 17, 72 defined 240 DDE Client defined 240 DDE Server defined 240 decimal precision 82, 96 devices *see* hardware devices disclaimer 17 documentation conventions 9 driver *see* telephone driver DTMF defined 240

#### Е

Edit / Change Operator Information dialog box 49, 54, 61, 164 e-mail notification about 42 configuring parameters 44 in control schedules 132 manually sending messages 45 message format 112 security 43 e-mail reports about 151 in control schedules 132 requesting via menu trees 125, 153 scheduling 151 e-mail server 44 alarm tag 92 failure 65 embedded variables See message variables errors 17 events logging 150 viewing for system 156

#### F

failed logins 119 failures 17 features 12, 13 file name conventions 235 firewall 43 frequently asked questions 164

### G

getting started 17 greeting speech 51 Group On-call Lists dialog box 59, 61, 62, 79, 96, 161 groups of operators 58 GSM 33, 35 defined 240 GUI defined 240

#### Η

hacker 93 hangup detection 146 hardware devices about 144 assigning functions to 144 debugging 158 FAQs 164 paging terminals 34 troubleshooting 163 HMIs and alarm acknowledgement 116 defined 241 integration 167 holidays in control schedules 133

#### I

ID code 47, 51 defined 241 iFIX alarm acknowledgement 196 and SCADAlarm 195 configuring acknowledge tags 199 configuring alarm tags 197 startup options 196 VBA samples 202 Import Done dialog box 174, 185 incoming calls configuring ring count 127 hardware device 145 quick reference 219 security 119 Industrial Application Server configuring as server 181 importing alarm tags from 182 using with SCADAlarm 181 Install New Modem dialog box 36, 37, 38 interactive voice scripts creating 97 examples data acquisition 105 discrete alarm 103 set-point change 106 simple alarm 102 InTouch configuring as server 168 importing alarm tags from 168 using with SCADAlarm 167 InTouch Browser dialog box 171 item defined 241 IVR defined 241 IXO 33, 35

#### L

license file 163 limits for numeric alarms 82 for paging 32 log files 151 line defined 241 linefeed character 73 local annunciation about 25 configuring repeat delay 26 features 14 hardware device 145 in control schedules 132 Locate InTouch dialog box 170, 171 log file

size limit 151 log files alarm tag values 77, 95 e-mailing 151 manually entering comments 155 path 151 requesting via menu trees 153 logging configuring 150 logging events 150 logging on 21 logging out 22 login e-mail 44 login style 48, 53 Login to ArchestrA dialog box 181 logins 21 detecting bad 93 failed attempts 66 for incoming calls 119 quick reference 220 Lookout alarm acknowledgement 204 alarm receipt 204 building an alarm tag 204 configuring alarm tags 209 configuring an acknowledge tag 206 configuring as the data server 203 startup options 203 using with SCADAlarm 203

#### Μ

menu commands 19 Menu Tree Construction dialog box 120, 122, 125, 154 menu trees about 15, 120 administrator-only options 123 constructing 122 example 125 functions 124 log report request 153 Message Exchange 17 defined 241 message formats about 15, 107 creating 108 examples alphanumeric 110 e-mail 112 numeric-only 111 text-to-speech 112 message variables 74, 107 microphone 136 modem cable 34 modem driver see also telephone driver troubleshooting 163 modems 135 configuring for paging terminal 35 e-mail notification 43

#### Ν

new line character 73 notification methods *See also* contact methods about 15 configuring for operators 50 numeric alarm tags 81 numeric paging about 29 alarm descriptions 76 digit limit 33 hardware device 145 message format 111 troubleshooting 163

#### 0

off state 75, 76 on state 75.76 on-call lists about 58 adding operators 61 example 63 On-call Preferences Schedule dialog box 56, 61 on-call schedule 57 configuring notification for operators 50 Operator Comment dialog box 117 operator groups "also notify" group 80, 174, 185 about 58 alarm acknowledgement 79, 174, 185 configuring for alarm tags 79 creating 59 deleting 62 for e-mail reports 154 renaming 61 Operator Information dialog box 18 operator profiles 47 changing 54 creating 49 deleting 54 operators about 14, 47 authentication 47 calling preferences 55 defined 241 displaying name 66 features 12 group on-call lists 58 logged in alarm tag 93 message variable 109 naming 50

#### Р

PABX 144 defined 241 pager ID defined 241 paging *See also* numeric paging, alphanumeric paging, voice paging, paging terminals about 29

configuring parameters 32 hardware device 145 in control schedules 132 manually sending message 40 sessions 33 paging terminals about 33 configuring SCADAlarm 39 hardware 34 PCM defined 242 Phone And Modem Options dialog box 35, 39 phone line alarm tag 91 failure 65 testing 143, 159 phone number 53 phone number for SCADAlarm 32 PIN 47, 55, 164 configuring 51 defined 241 Play a Voice Prompt File dialog box 136 priority 78, 96, 173, 184 from InTouch 173 project files 147 prompt defined 241 protocols 33, 35 about 17 for servers 72 proxy server 43 pulse telephone system 29

### Q

quick reference 219

### R

Recorder window 138 recording time 143 reference 219, 227 registry keys 227 report scripts See interactive voice report script, tag report scripts RIFF defined 242 ring count 128, 132 configuring 127 RJ-11 defined 242 RSView23 as the data server 211 RSView32 alarm acknowledgement 211 and SCADAlarm 210 configuring alarm tags 212 startup options 211

#### S

SAPI defined 242 SCADA defined 242

System Parameters dialog box 22, 26, 27, 42, 44, 91, 114, 115, 128, 132, 142, 149, 150, 151, 162 system status 155 System Status dialog box 155, 157, 158, 166 system testing 132, 160

#### Т

**SCADAlarm** 

about 11

exiting 22

disabling 65,91

features 12, 13, 14

getting started 17 logging in 21

logging out 22

158

schedule 57 scripts

security

SCADAlrm.ini 227

configuration overview 23

running for the first time 17

SCADAlarm alarm dialog box 116

administrative priviledges 50

configuring for operators 51 e-mail notification 43

configuring for alarm tags 70

for menu trees 123

operator ID code 51

monitoring health 65

monitoring status 89

using InTouch 168

using Lookout 203 using RSView32 211

using WinCC 215

viewing status 158

Sound File Conversion Utility 143

viewing for server 158

viewing for system 155

defined 242

sound card 136

speech file 83, 173

status bar 19, 23

SuiteLink 17, 72

defined 242

system parameters 148

using Citect 189 using iFIX 195

for operators 47 logging on 21

logging out 22

155

servers

SMPP

status

SMS 35 defined 242

bad login attempts alarm tag 93

SCADAlarm dialog box 114

SCADAlarm Database Utility 94, 96

starting when WindowViewer starts 180

SCADAlarm Text-to-speech Text Files dialog box 51, 61, 76, 83, 100, 124, 139

SCADAlarm Telephony State Driver dialog box 143,

See interactive voice scripts, tag report scripts

Select-an-operator dialog box 21, 54, 55, 164

Send a Page or Log a Comment dialog box 41, 45,

Send a Page or Log Comment dialog box 140, 141

configuring Industrial Application Server 181

using Industrial Application Server 181

configuring general preferences 22

tag database about 15,65 exporting 96 tag ID number 76 Tag Import Filter dialog box 172, 175, 184, 186 Tag Report Script Construction dialog box 96, 97, 101, 103, 108 tag report scripts 97 about 15, 97 functions for menu trees 124 tagname defined 242 tags See alarm tags Tag-Vue 94 Tag-Vue dialog box 95 TAP 33, 35, 53 defined 243 **TAPI 144** defined 242 technical support 157, 166 Telco defined 242 Telephone / Speech Driver Configuration dialog box 135, 137, 143, 144, 159, 163 telephone driver ini reference 232. configuring parameters 143 telephone menu trees See menu trees telephone parameters .ini reference 234 telephone retries 27 telephony cards 144 telephony state driver debugging 158 templates voice prompts 223 testing alarm tags 84, 117 phone line 159 system 79, 132, 160 text converting to voice prompt 140 paging standards 53 text-to-speech automatic report scripting 176 creating files 138 defined 243 file parameters 142 message format 112 toolbar 18, 23 tooltips 22 top menu 120 script template 224

```
topic 72
defined 243
troubleshooting 163
TSP
defined 243
TUI
defined 243
```

### U

UCP 33, 35, 53 defined 243 Unimodem V defined 243

#### V

variables See message variables voice calling about 26 answer detection 146 configuring retry parameters 27 hangup detection 146 hardware device 145 in control schedules 132 pulse telephone systems 29 quick reference 219 ring count 132 voice paging about 31 delay 40 Voice Prompt File dialog box 51, 61, 76, 83, 100, 124, 137, 141 voice prompts 76, 83, 100, 173, 174, 184, 185 about 135 configuring 135 converting formats 143 converting from text 140 defined 243 for alarm states 76 for menu trees 124 for operator group 61 in tag report scripts 99 recording 136 system files 236 templates 223 VoIP defined 243

#### W

WinCC alarm acknowledgment 216 and SCADAlarm 214 as the data server 215 configuring alarm tags 216 startup options 215 WindowViewer 180